

---

**IBM 3720 Communication  
Controller, and  
IBM 3721 Expansion Unit**

---

**IBM Maintenance Library:**

**Service Guide**

---

**System/370, 30xx, 4300  
and 9370 Processors**

---

---

**Publication Number  
SY33-2039-1**

---



## **Second Edition (May 1987)**

This major revision obsoletes SY33-2039-0. Extensive changes have been made throughout this edition, and this manual should be read in its entirety.

Changes are made periodically to the information herein. Any such changes will be reported in subsequent revisions or Technical Newsletters.

IBM has prepared this manual for the use of IBM customer engineers in the installation, maintenance, or repair of the specific machines indicated. IBM makes no representation that it is suitable for any other purpose.

References in this publication to IBM products, programs, or services do not imply that IBM intends to make these available in all countries in which IBM operates. Any reference to an IBM licensed program in this publication is not intended to state or imply that only IBM's licensed program may be used. Any functionally equivalent program may be used instead.

Publications are not stocked at the addresses given below. Requests for IBM publications should be made to your IBM representative or to the IBM branch office serving your locality.

A form for reader's comments is provided at the back of this publication. If the form has been removed, comments may be addressed to:

International Business Machines Corporation  
Department 6R1LG  
180 Kost Road  
Mechanicsburg  
PA 17055

or

IBM France,  
Centre d'Etudes et Recherches,  
Service 0762,  
06610 La Gaude,  
France

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

---

## Where to Go if you Want to:

• Connect to MOSS and access MOSS function menus, Know your console and understand MOSS panels.	Chap.1	Introduction
• Understand BER (Box Event Record) panels, BER/FRU/Reference code correlation.	Chap.2	BER
• Run diagnostics and OLTs from the console.	Chap.3	Diagnostics
• Display/alter scanner control storage and registers, dump/IML a scanner, or scanner AC (address compare), start scanner checkpoint trace.	Chap.4	TSS Functions
• Display storage, dumps and modules (hexadecimal). Delete dump files or the BER file.	Chap.5	Display/Delete
• Handle (apply and restore) microcode fixes (MCFs).	Chap.6	MCF
• Handle (create, modify, and apply) microcode patches.	Chap.7	Microcode Patch
• Create, upgrade, and display/update the configuration data file (CDF).	Chap.8	CDF
• Display and use control panel functions from the console.	Chap.9	Panel Functions
• Save, restore, format, and change the MOSS disk. Install an engineering change (EC).	Chap.10	Disk Functions
• Display, alter, or dump token-ring registers, storage, and parameter blocks.	Chap.11	TRSS Functions
• IPL the 3720 or IML a scanner, display Machine Level Table (MLT), run in diskette mode, use wrap tests, perform the Stand Alone Link Tests (SALT), take a MOSS, scanner or TIC dump, transfer files to the host.	Chap.12	Other Functions
• Run MOSS and transfer/print files from/to remote PC.	Appx.A	Remote PC
• See the explanation and action for messages or alarms.	Appx.B	Messages

**Other functions:** See next page for the information on the functions, procedures and items that are described in other manuals.

The following table lists the functions available to the user. This table also indicates in which manual you can find how to select and run the function, and a detailed description of that function.

## Abbreviations Used for 3720 Publications

Throughout this manual we will use abbreviations when referring to manuals:

- *PD* for 3720/3721 *Problem Determination*
- *ES* for 3720/3721 *Extended Services*
- *Diag* for 3720 *Diagnostic Descriptions*
- *MIP* for 3720 *Maintenance Information Procedures*
- *MIR* for 3720 *Maintenance Information Reference*
- *OPG* for 3720 *Operator's Guide*
- *SU* for 3720 *Setup Instructions*
- *IM* for 3720-1/11 *Installation Manual*
- *SI* for 3720 *System Integration*

**Note:** For more information concerning these manuals, see the 3720 bibliography (vi).

Functions described	In
Control program procedure (C).	ES
Configuration data file (CDF).	also ES
Line description file (LDF).	ES only
Line interface display (LID).	ES only
Link IPL ports (LKP).	ES
Link test (responder and requester).	ES
Port swap (PS).	ES
Stand-Alone Link Test (SALT)	also ES
Token-ring interface (TRI).	ES
Wrap tests (Internal, Modem, cable, tailgate)	also ES
CCU functions such as address compare, CA state, data exchange, display alter, display long,	ES
MOSS online or offline, set/reset branch trace.	ES
Immediate Functions such as stop, set/reset IOC, CCU	ES
Alert/Alarm/messages and password management (P)	also PD
Installation (customer) of 3721 or 3720-2/12 (no CA)	SU
Installation (maintenance) of 3720-1/11 (with CA)	IM
Integration of the 3720 into the network	SI
3720 power ON and OFF (local, remote host/network)	OPG
3720 IPL from control panel	OPG
Control panel description	OPG, MIP
Hexadecimal codes (Panel)	MIP, MIR
Diagnostics from panel, reference codes and FRUs	MIP
Reference information on: CCU, TSS, TRA and CAs,	
MOSS and adapters, buses and redrives,	
disk and diskette drives, power supplies,	
traces, dumps, BERS	MIR
Detailed description on diagnostics	Diag

**Note:** *also* means that the function is described in this manual, as well as in the manual listed.



---

## Read this First

### This Manual Is Addressed To...

The service representatives who maintain the 3720 Communication Controllers.

This manual describes how the service functions, which are specifically for the CE and not intended for customer use, are used from the operator console.

**Note:** The operator panel procedures are not given in this manual.

**Primary** audience: Product Support Trained (PST) CE

**Secondary** audience: Area Support, Program Service Representative, Product Engineering

A more complete definition of the service personnel is given in "Service Personnel Definitions" on page vii.

This manual must be used in conjunction with the 3720 bibliography, as described in "Bibliography" on page vi.

---

## Safety Inspection Procedures

Any deficiencies detected by running safety inspection procedures, if they make the 3720/3721 unsafe, must be reported to the owner and/or user. Then, before any repair action is performed, the IBM CE will correct these deficiencies by:

- Following the repair procedures given in the maintenance package.
- Ordering the missing or failing parts, using the *3720 Parts Catalog*.

The 3720 areas and functions checked through safety inspection procedures are:

1. External covers
2. Safety labels
3. Safety covers and shields
4. Grounding
5. Circuit breaker and protector rating
6. Input power voltage
7. Power-ON indicator
8. Emergency power OFF.

**Important note:** The *Safety Inspection Procedures* section at the beginning of the *Maintenance Information Reference* manual, SY33-2040, gives all details concerning:

- The various safety labels, and where they are located
- The circuit breakers (CBs) and circuit protectors (CP) locations, identifications, and ratings.

## Bibliography

### Customer Documentation

Volume	Model	Manual	Form No.
VOL A	3720-1	Feature Addition Instructions	GA33-0110
	3720-2	Setup Instructions	GA33-0112
	3720-11	Feature Addition Instructions	GA33-0111
	3720-12	Setup Instructions	GA33-0113
	All models	System Integration	GA33-0067
	3721	Setup Instructions	GA33-0114
VOL B	All models	Operator's Guide	GA33-0065
		Problem Determination Guide	GA33-0086
VOL C	All models	Extended Services	GA33-0066

### Service Documentation

Volume	Model	Manual	Form No.
VOL 1	3720-1/2	Maintenance Information Procedures (MIP)	SY33-2050
	3720-11/12	MIP	SY33-2060
VOL 2	All models	Quick Reference Summary	SY33-2058
		Maintenance Information Reference (MIR). 2 volumes	SY33-2040
VOL 3	All models	Service Guide	SY33-2039
VOL 4	3720-1/11	Installation Manual	SY33-2053
	All models	Parts Catalog	S135-2009
VOL 5	All models	Wiring Diagram	(Part No.)
Other service Documentation (not in shipping group)			
	3720/3721	RETAIN URSF Guide (IBM internal use only)	ZZ33-7001
	3720/3721	Diagnostic Descriptions	SY33-2042
	3720/3721	Channel Adapter On-Line Tests (with S/370 CAOLT tape)	D99-3720-A

**Note:** "Service Personnel Definitions" on page vii describes the user of the service documentation.

### Volume and Kit Relationship

Most volumes are delivered in kit form, as follows:

Kit SK2T-0271: Volume 1 (3720-1, 3720-2)  
Kit SK2T-0272: Volume 2-1 and 2-2  
Kit SK2T-0273: Volume 3  
Kit SK2T-0274: Volume 4  
Kit SK2T-0275: Volume 4  
Kit SK2T-0277: Volume B  
Kit SK2T-0278: Volume C  
Kit SK2T-0279: Volume 1 (3720-11, 3720-12)  
Kit SK2T-0280: Volume A (3720-1)  
Kit SK2T-0281: Volume A (3720-11)  
Kit SK2T-0282: Volume A (3720-2)  
Kit SK2T-0283: Volume A (3720-12)

## Service Personnel Definitions

Definition	Uses
<p>Product Trained CE (PT CE): hardware CE also able to fix problems in the microcode</p> <p>Also called:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CE1</li> <li>1st Level CE</li> <li>CE Phase 1</li> </ul>	<p>RETAIN console Control panel RETAIN URSF Guide MIP Parts Catalog 3720-1/11 Installation Manual Problem Determination Guide Extended Services Operator's Guide System Integration Setup Instructions (Occasionally: 3720 console and 3720 Service Guide)</p>
<p>Product Support Trained CE (PST CE): hardware CE also able to determine and fix problems in the microcode</p> <p>Also called:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CE2</li> <li>2nd Level CE</li> <li>CE Phase 2</li> <li>Specialist</li> <li>Support</li> </ul>	<p>Same as PT CE, plus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3720 console</li> <li>Service Guide</li> <li>MIR</li> <li>Quick Reference Summary</li> <li>YZ pages</li> <li>Diagnostics Descriptions</li> <li>Principles of Operation</li> </ul>
<p>Higher Support:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Area</li> <li>Country</li> <li>PE</li> <li>Lab Specialist</li> </ul>	<p>Same as PST CE, plus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Engineering Tools</li> <li>Specifications</li> <li>Workbooks</li> </ul>
<p>Hardware Central Service (HCS)</p> <p>May include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Dispatchers</li> <li>PT CEs</li> <li>PST CEs</li> </ul>	<p>All 3720 tools and books</p>
<p>Program Service Representative (PSR)</p> <p>Also called:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Product Support CE</li> <li>Software CE</li> </ul>	<p>NCP/EP library</p>



---

# Contents

<b>Chapter 1. Introduction</b>	1-1
Controller Organization	1-1
Programming Support for the 3720	1-1
Maintenance Philosophy	1-3
MOSS Operator Consoles	1-4
Console Hardware Prerequisite	1-4
Possible Console Connection to MOSS	1-4
MOSS Console Screen Layout	1-5
Keyboard Differences	1-7
How to Start, Select, and Perform a MOSS-3720 Function	1-8
Modem (DCE) Requirements for the Remote Console	1-9
Control Panel	1-9
Remote Connection to MOSS (without RETAIN)	1-10
Remote Connection Procedure	1-10
Local Connection to MOSS by Service Personnel	1-12
Setting the Operating Conditions for an IBM PC	1-12
Setting the Operating Conditions for an IBM 3161/3163	1-14
Accessing MOSS Functions by Service Personnel	1-15
Requesting a Function from the 3720 Function Menu	1-16
Accessing CCU Functions	1-17
Requesting a CCU Function	1-17
Some Messages after a Function Selection	1-18
Leaving the MOSS (Log Off)	1-19
Leaving Procedure after Remote Connection	1-19
Leaving Procedure after Local Connection	1-19
Machine Status Area	1-20
MSA with Scanner and CCU/Scanner IPL Information	1-21
Scanner Information (in MSA)	1-24
CCU/Scanner IPL Information (in MSA)	1-26
Token-Ring Information in MSA	1-28
 <b>Chapter 2. Analyzing BERs (Box Event Records)</b>	 2-1
Box Event Record Generation	2-1
Automatic BER Analysis	2-1
MOSS Consolidated BER	2-1
Purpose of this Section	2-2
BER Type and ID	2-2
Where to Find More BER Information	2-3
BER Display Sequence	2-4
Requesting the BER Display	2-5
BER Display Panels	2-7
BER Summary Display	2-7
BER List Display	2-8
BER Detail Display	2-9
BER File Erasure	2-11
Updating the Service Information Field in Alarm BERs	2-11
Manual BER Correlation and Reference Code Interpretation	2-12
BER Correlation Procedure	2-12
Reference Code Interpretation into FRUs	2-13
 <b>Chapter 3. Running Diagnostics from Console</b>	 3-1
What Are 3720 Diagnostics	3-1
Error During Diagnostics	3-2
Offline Diagnostics Monitoring	3-2
Diagnostic Structure	3-2
Diagnostic Identification	3-2
List and Duration of Diagnostics	3-3
Manual Routines	3-3

Worldwide Wrap Test during Diagnostics (at Tailgate)	3-4
Wrap Test during Diagnostics for Japan Only	3-4
Line Testing Possibilities	3-5
Remote Power-Off Test procedure.	3-6
How to Run Offline Diagnostics from the Operator Console	3-7
Selecting the Offline Diagnostics	3-7
Selecting from Diagnostic Request Menu	3-9
Use of CCU Functions with Diagnostics	3-12
Selection of a CCU Function During Diagnostics	3-13
Resuming DCF Processing	3-14
Diagnostic Selection Modify Menu	3-15
Diagnostic Execution Modify Menu	3-15
Diagnostic Options	3-17
Diagnostic Work Area Description	3-20
Common Information	3-20
Work Area Description (Common Fields)	3-20
Detailed Diagnostic Information	3-24
Diagnostic Error Reporting Display	3-24
Diagnostic Unexpected Error Display	3-26
DCF Unexpected Error Display	3-27
Description of Fields for Unexpected DCF RACs	3-28
How to Run Channel Adapter Online Tests (OLTs)	3-32
 <b>Chapter 4. Transmission Subsystem (TSS) Functions</b>	 4-1
Selecting TSS Functions	4-1
Select/Release Scanner Function	4-3
Selecting a Scanner	4-3
Releasing a Scanner	4-3
Dump/IML (Scanner)	4-4
Dump or IML Selection Procedure	4-4
Dump a Scanner	4-5
Requesting a Scanner Dump.	4-5
IML a Scanner	4-6
Scanner Mode Control	4-7
Scanner Mode Control Selection Procedure	4-7
Display/Alter Scanner Control Storage Function	4-9
Selecting Scanner Display/Alter Control Storage Function	4-9
Displaying the Scanner Control Storage	4-9
Altering the Scanner Control Storage	4-10
Display/Alter Scanner Blocks	4-11
Selecting Display/Alter Scanner Blocks	4-11
Display/Alter Scanner LSRs	4-13
Selecting Display/Alter Scanner LSR Function	4-13
Display/Alter Scanner XREGs	4-14
Selecting Display/Alter Scanner XREG Function	4-14
Scanner Address Compare	4-15
Scanner Address Compare Selection	4-15
Deactivating the Scanner Address Compare	4-17
Scanner Checkpoint Trace	4-17
Selecting the Scanner Checkpoint Trace Function	4-17
 <b>Chapter 5. Displaying Dumps, Storage, and Modules, Deleting Files</b>	 5-1
Displaying Dumps, Storage, and Modules	5-1
Displaying an NCP Dump	5-2
Displaying a MOSS Dump	5-3
MOSS Dump Area Selection	5-4
Displaying a Scanner Dump	5-5
Scanner Dump Area Selection	5-6
Displaying a TRSS (TIC) Dump	5-7
TIC Dump Selection	5-7
Displaying the MOSS Storage	5-9
Module DPLY (Module Display)	5-10
Hexadecimal Display of Dumps	5-11

Deleting a File from MOSS Disk	5-12
Selecting the File Delete Function	5-12
Deleting the MOSS Dump File	5-13
Deleting the Scanner Dump File	5-13
Deleting a TIC Dump	5-13
Deleting the BER File	5-15
<b>Chapter 6. Applying and Displaying Microcode Fixes (MCF)</b>	6-1
What Are Microcode Fixes and Patches	6-1
MCF Organization	6-2
When to Use the MCF Function	6-2
Conditions for Handling Microcode Fixes	6-3
Accessing the MCF Management Function	6-4
Displaying the MCF History Table	6-6
Listing Old and New MCFs	6-7
Listing Old MCFs	6-7
Listing New MCFs	6-7
MCF Upgrade of Microcode	6-8
Error During MCF Upgrade	6-9
MCF Restore	6-11
Installing Microcode Fixes (MCFs)	6-12
MCF Installation Procedure	6-12
MCF File Organization	6-12
<b>Chapter 7. Handling Patches to Microcode</b>	7-1
What Are Microcode Fixes and Patches	7-1
Conditions for Handling Microcode Patches	7-1
New Patches	7-2
Patch File Organization	7-3
Accessing the Patch Management Function	7-4
Creating a Patch	7-6
Filing a Patch	7-8
Listing of Patches	7-9
Listing of Non-applied Patches	7-9
Listing of Applied Patches	7-9
Applying a Patch	7-11
Disk Error While a Patch Is Being Applied.	7-12
Erasing a Patch	7-14
Scanning a Patch	7-16
Modifying a Patch	7-18
Restoring Applied Patches	7-20
Restore Patch Function	7-20
Copying Microcode Patches Onto MOSS Diskette	7-22
Copy Onto MOSS Diskette Procedure	7-22
Copying Microcode Patches from a Diskette Onto MOSS Disk	7-24
Copy Onto MOSS Disk Procedure.	7-24
Installing a Patch	7-26
Patch Installation Procedure	7-26
<b>Chapter 8. Configuration Data File (CDF)</b>	8-1
CDF Functions in Service Mode	8-2
Creating a CDF	8-3
Upgrading the CDF	8-4
Verifying the CDF	8-5
Service CDF Display/Update	8-7
CDF Display/Update LAB/CAB (3720/3721)	8-8
CDF Display/Update of Channel Adapters	8-9
CDF Display/Update of Scanners or TRA	8-10
Updating the CDF for Scanners	8-12
Updating the CDF for the TRA	8-13
CDF Display of LSSD	8-14
CDF Display/Update Information	8-15
Customer CDF	8-16

Display/Update Direct-Attached Line Speed	8-16
<b>Chapter 9. Panel Functions from MOSS Console</b>	9-1
Accessing the Panel Function	9-2
Using Control Panel Functions from Console	9-4
Enabling or Disabling Channel Adapters from Console	9-4
General IPL or MOSS IML with RESET from Console	9-5
<b>Chapter 10. Disk-Diskette Management Functions</b>	10-1
Accessing the Disk Management Functions	10-2
How to Save Disk Contents onto Diskettes	10-3
Diskettes to Be Used	10-3
Disk-to-Diskette Procedure	10-4
Disk Saving Procedure	10-5
Disk Save Error Messages	10-6
How to Restore the Disk from Diskettes	10-7
Diskettes to Be Used	10-7
Diskette-to-Disk Procedure	10-7
Checking the Diskettes	10-7
Disk Restore Panels and Error Messages	10-8
How to Initialize the Disk	10-10
Disk Initialization Procedure	10-10
Position Disk Recording Arm back to Landing Zone	10-12
Diskette Formatting	10-13
Diskette Initialization Procedure	10-13
Installing an Engineering Change (EC)	10-14
EC Installation Sequence	10-14
EC Installation Panels and Error Messages	10-16
Hard Disk Trouble Analysis and Replacement	10-17
<b>Chapter 11. Token-Ring Subsystem (TRSS) Functions</b>	11-1
Selecting TRSS Functions	11-1
Select a Token-Ring Adapter (TRA)	11-3
TRA Connection and Disconnection	11-4
Display/Alter TRM Registers	11-5
TIC Selection	11-7
Display/Alter TIC Interrupt Register	11-8
Display TIC Storage	11-9
Dump TIC Storage	11-11
TIC Dump Area	11-12
Display TIC SCB and SSB	11-13
Display TIC Parameter Blocks	11-14
Display Token-Ring Status	11-15
TRSS Modes (TRA modes and TIC Modes)	11-16
<b>Chapter 12. Additional Functions</b>	12-1
3720 IPL and One-Scanner IML	12-2
3720 IPL	12-2
Requesting the 3720 IPL	12-2
One-Scanner IML	12-3
Requesting One Scanner IML	12-4
Machine Level Table (MLT) Display	12-5
Origin of MLT Information	12-5
Displaying the MLT	12-5
Diskette Mode	12-6
Stand-Alone Link Tests (SALT)	12-7
Testing an INN Link	12-7
SDLC Terminals Exerciser Without CP Loaded	12-7
Taking a Dump	12-9
NCP Dump	12-9
MOSS Dump	12-10
Scanner Dump	12-11
TIC Dump	12-12



Password and Customer Identification Management	12-13
File Transfer and Print at Host Location	12-14
Transfer to the Host	12-14
Transfer to the Support Function	12-14
Receiving Files from Support Function	12-15
Printing MOSS Files at the Host Location	12-15
Wrap Tests Controlled from the MOSS	12-16
Token-Ring Wrap Tests	12-17
<b>Appendix A. MOSS File Transfer/Print from PC</b>	<b>A-1</b>
General Overview	A-2
Remote Assistance Concept	A-2
Hardware Requirements	A-2
Software Requirements	A-3
Transferring MCFs from VM to 3720 EC Diskette via a PC/AT	A-4
Transferring MCFs from VM to PC then to MOSS	A-5
How to Select a File Transfer/Print Function	A-7
File Naming	A-7
Accessing the File Transfer Selection Panel	A-11
File Transfer PF Keys	A-11
Selecting the File to Be Transferred	A-12
Receiving a File from MOSS	A-13
Selecting the File you Want to Receive	A-13
File Transfer Execution Sample	A-16
Receiving a MOSS Dump	A-17
Receive MOSS Dump Transfer, Execution Sample	A-18
Receiving a Scanner Dump	A-20
Receiving TRSS Dumps	A-22
Sending an MCF File from PC to 3720	A-24
File Printing Application	A-26
Application Description	A-26
File Printing Procedure	A-26
Selecting the File you Want to Print	A-26
Printing a File	A-27
File Printing Execution Sample	A-28
Printing TRSS Dumps	A-29
Remote Application Description	A-31
Error Recovery	A-32
Data Transparency	A-32
Data Integrity	A-32
MOSS/PC Interface	A-33
General Information About the Protocol	A-33
PC Diskette File Sizing	A-34
Remote Assistance Application Messages	A-35
<b>Appendix B. Messages and Alarms</b>	<b>B-1</b>
Messages	B-1
Alarms	B-4
How to Display an Alarm	B-4
<b>List of Abbreviations</b>	<b>X-1</b>
<b>Glossary</b>	<b>X-3</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>X-7</b>



---

# Chapter 1. Introduction

---

## Controller Organization

Depending on the Model used, the 3720 Communication Controllers are equipped with one or more of the following subsystems:

- Control subsystem
- Transmission subsystem
- Token-ring subsystem
- Maintenance and operator subsystem

### Control Subsystem

The control subsystem (CSS) controls data transfers over the channel interface and executes the control program. It is composed of the central control unit (CCU) with its associated storage, and from zero to two channel adapters (CA).

### Transmission Subsystem

The transmission subsystem (TSS) controls data transfers over the transmission interface. It consists basically of up to three communication scanner processors (CSPs) and a certain number of line interface couplers (LICs).

### Token-Ring Subsystem

The token-ring subsystem (TRSS) controls data transfers over IBM token-ring local area networks. It consists basically of one token-ring multiplexor (TRM) which controls up to two token-ring interface couplers (TICs). A TRM and its TIC(s) are referred to as the token-ring adapter (TRA).

### Maintenance and Operator Subsystem

The maintenance and operator subsystem (MOSS) provides the operating and service facilities to the customer's operator and to the customer engineer (CE). The MOSS includes a processor and storage, a diskette drive, a disk drive, a control panel, and their adapters.

An operator console can be direct-attached to the MOSS. A DCE-attached console may reach the 3720 by dialing through a telecommunication network.

### Interfaces

All 3720 communication controllers interface with the user network via the transmission interface or the token-ring interface.

The 3720 Models 1 and 11 interface with the host processor(s) via the channel interface.

### Programming Support for the 3720

The control program that runs in the CCU may be:

- ACF/NCP

Advanced Communication Functions for Network Control Program (ACF/NCP) (simply called the NCP in this manual) is an IBM licensed program product. The NCP provides major capabilities for SNA user application networks with SDLC. However, the NCP is not limited to SDLC devices, and existing start-stop and binary synchronous networks can be migrated to the 3720.

The token-ring interconnection is integrated in the NCP. It is referred to as NTRI (Network Token-Ring Interconnection). NTRI also ensures the detection of ring-related problems.

The NCP works with ACF/VTAM.

The NCP supports the communication network management (CNM) concept when operating with the following IBM licensed programs:

- NetView, a network management product which integrates NCCF, NPDA, NDLM, VCNA, and NMPF
- Network Communication Control Facility (NCCF)
- Network Problem Determination Application (NPDA)
- Network Logical Data Manager (NLDM)

In the 3720, the communication network management is supported by sending failure messages called alerts from the MOSS to the host for display. For most failures, these messages are sufficiently explicit so that the customer can take the appropriate corrective action. Similar messages, called alarms, are sent to the operator console of the controller.

- The Emulation Program

The Emulation Program for the 3720 (EP/3720, simply called the EP in this manual) emulates most of the functions of the IBM 2701, 2702, or 2703, and can communicate with various access methods running in the host. The EP can run only in a channel-attached 3720. When the EP is used, the host must provide a separate subchannel for each line.

The EP works with TCAM, BTAM, and BTAM Extended Support.

The EP does not support the token-ring attachment (3720 Models 11 and 12).

- The Partitioned Emulation Programming (PEP) Extension.

The PEP is the Network Control Program and Emulation Program merged into one.

- Programming Support for the Host

A number of IBM system support programs (SSPs) are available. They are executed in the host and are used to generate the control programs and load them into the controller, dump the controller storage on the host printer, and transfer disk files to the host.

---

## Maintenance Philosophy

The maintenance of the 3720 is based on:

1. Error detection by hardware and software.
2. Error collection by the control program and the MOSS microcode.
3. Error notification to the customer through alarm and alert messages (NetView or NPDA), or alarm messages (EP).
4. Problem determination by the customer at the host site and the controller site so as to call the appropriate service personnel.
5. Problem isolation by service personnel.
6. FRU replacement, repair, and verification.

### Concurrent Maintenance

Generally, the controller is not available to the customer when the diagnostics are being run, or if a field-replaceable unit (FRU) is being replaced. However, the controller is available to the customer when a repair is being made in the disk/diskette drive or the operator console, or when diagnostics are being run only for testing the MOSS.

This mode of operation is called concurrent maintenance.

### Repair Action in Case of Solid Error

A failing FRU may be indicated by the following error information:

- Repair action codes (RACs) given by the offline diagnostics on the operator console or on the control panel's hexadecimal display.
- Error codes given by the IPL checkout programs on the control panel's hexadecimal display.

### Intermittent Error

If an intermittent error is not confirmed by the diagnostics, the automatic BER analysis program may issue a reference code that identifies the suspected FRUs.

Any error indication points to a list of suspected FRUs and replacement procedures in the *3720 Maintenance Information Procedures* (MIP) (SY33-2050 or SY33-2060 depending on the model that is being serviced).

# MOSS Operator Consoles

## Console Hardware Prerequisite

The console to be used to communicate with MOSS is:

- The IBM 3161 Models 11 and 12 in 3101 emulation mode.
- The IBM 3163 Models 11 and 12 in 3101 emulation mode.
- The IBM 3164 Models 11 and 12 in 3101 emulation mode.
- The IBM PC 5150, 5160, 5155, 5170, or 5550 with an Asynchronous Communication Adapter (or equivalent), running the IBM 3101 emulation program number 6024-042.
- The IBM 3101 Model 23 or any other operator console with the same characteristics.

The related documentation is:

- The IBM PC 3101 Emulation program, 6024042
- The IBM 3101 Display Terminal Description, GA18-2033
- The IBM 3161/3163 ASCII Display Station Description, GA18-2310

**Note:** The service personnel, when at the 3720 location, and when no customer console is available, uses the IBM Portable PC (5155) with the 3101 emulation program or the PT2.

## Possible Console Connection to MOSS

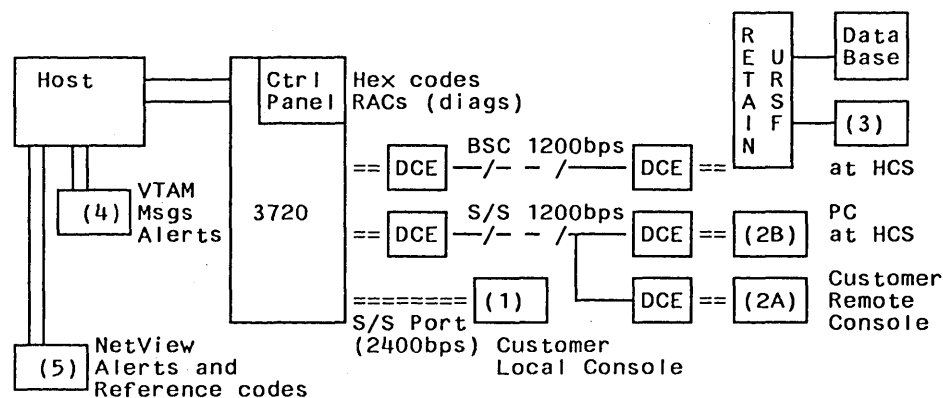


Figure 1-1. Remote and Onsite Service By PS CE

- Console 1 is the customer's or IBM's local console (PC or PT2).
- Consoles 2A, 2B are the customer's or IBM's remote console.
- Console 3 is the IBM RSF (RETAIN) console.
- Consoles 4, 5 are the customer's VTAM and NetView consoles.

**Note:** All the consoles of Figure 1-1 may not be present, depending on the customer's installation. **If RSF is not provided, there must be at least one local 3101-like customer's console available for the 3720.** This console need not be dedicated to the 3720.

## MOSS Console Screen Layout

The console and keyboard of the 3101-like terminal are fully described in the *IBM 3101 Display Terminal Description*, GA18-2033.

The MOSS operator screen is divided as illustrated in Figure 1-2.

```

                                MACHINE STATUS AREA (MSA)

CUSTOMER ID: .....          3720-1          SERIAL NUMBER: xxxxx
----- MAINTENANCE MODE -----
FUNCTION ON SCREEN          FUNCTION PENDING:

SYSTEM INPUT AREA (SIA) ==>    <---- Selection Message Area (45) ---->
T:TERMINATE  OFF: LOGOFF  PF1: MOVE TO SIA  PF2: CCU FNCTN  PF3: ALARM

                                3720  FUNCTION  MENU
                                or
                                CCU  FUNCTION  MENU
                                or
                                FUNCTION AREA when a function is selected

<-----FUNCTION MESSAGE AREA----->
ALARM:
```

Figure 1-2. The 3720 Console Screen Main Areas

**MACHINE STATUS AREA:** Shows the current status of the 3720, or IPL progression (see details in "Machine Status Area" on page 1-20).

**CUSTOMER ID:** Customer identification. Permanently displayed.

This information is entered by the customer using the *password management function*.

**MAINTENANCE MODE:** This line is displayed on all screens when MOSS is used by the maintenance personnel.

**Warning:** If MOSS is used in local mode, it means that the MOSS CE switch 3 is ON, and that MOSS can be accessed without a password.

Follow the *Leaving Procedure After Local Connection* before giving the 3720 back to the customer:

1. Set Panel-Console switch to Panel.
2. Set MOSS CE Switch 3 to the OFF position.
3. IML MOSS from panel.

**FUNCTION ON SCREEN:** This sentence appears when a function is displayed. The name of the function is written next to it.

**SERIAL NUMBER:** Machine serial number of the 3720. Permanently displayed.

This information is entered by manufacturing, or when formatting a new disk.

**FUNCTION PENDING:** This sentence appears when a function is pending. The name of the function is written next to it.

**SYSTEM INPUT AREA (SIA) ==>** Where the cursor should be to:

- Select a function
- Terminate (T) the MOSS function that was running
- Log off (OFF) from the MOSS application

Use PF1 to place the cursor in the *SIA*.

**SELECTION MESSAGE AREA:** Area (45 characters) in which to display messages relative to what you entered in the selection area.

**FUNCTION AREA:** Function display and operator input.

**FUNCTION MESSAGE AREA:** Area (80 characters) in which to display messages relative to the function area.

**ALARM AREA:** Area (65 characters) on line 24 in which to display alarms.

The alarms give the probable cause, the area of the error, and a reference code that may lead to a FRU list.

All alarms are listed in the *3720 Problem Determination* manual, GA33-0066, and in "Alarms" on page B-4.

Each new alarm replaces the previous one on the display (up to six).

When there is more than one alarm, the word **ALARM** is blinking.

Pressing PF3 displays the previous alarm.

**Note:** Input is possible only in the system input area or in the function area.

## Explanations of Common Commands and PF Keys on Panel

**OFF (Log off):** If you enter *OFF* in the system input area, you are disconnected from MOSS.

### Notes:

1. You **cannot** use *OFF* while a function is active or pending: use *T* to terminate it.
2. You **cannot** use *OFF* while the **CCU function menu** panel is displayed. Use *PF2* to return to the **3720 function menu** panel.

**T (Terminate):** If you enter *T* (terminate) in the system input area:

- If a function is running, it will terminate the function.
- The previous panel (**3720 function menu** panel or **CCU function menu** panel) will be displayed.

**PF1: MOVE to SIA:** Moves the cursor to the system input area, for you to type the function you selected, or *T* to terminate, or *OFF* to disconnect the user from MOSS.

**PF2: CCU FNCTN:** Pressing PF2 when you are on the **3720 function menu** panel (or using one of the functions of that panel), displays the **CCU function menu** panel (Figure 1-10 on page 1-17).

Pressing PF2 when you are on the **CCU function menu** panel (or using one of the functions of that panel), displays the **3720 function menu** panel (Figure 1-8 on page 1-15).

**PF3: ALARM:** Erases the latest alarm (if any) from the alarm area.

Displays the previous alarms.

**Warning:** Please note all information, especially the reference code, before erasing the alarm.

This information can still be found by displaying the BERs.



## Keyboard Differences

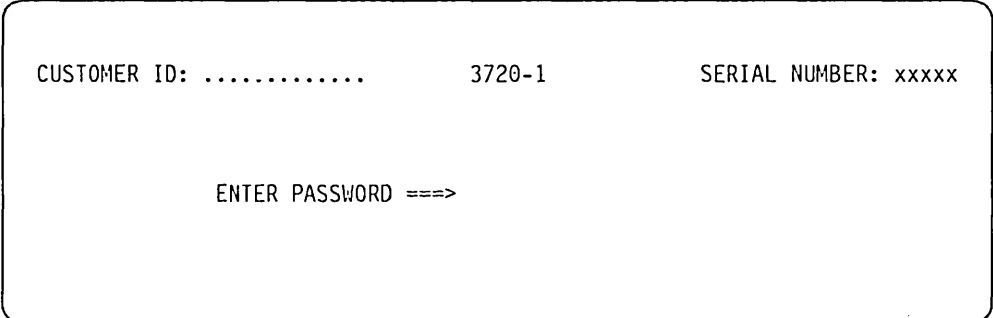
Since the consoles may be of different types, the keyboards used may vary, from country to country, and from customer to customer.

For standardization, we use a specific terminology when referring to some keys of the keyboard.

## Keyboard Terminology

- SEND:** This is the key pressed to confirm the data just typed. Sometimes called the *ENTER* key.
- BREAK:** This is the key pressed to interrupt the automatic transmission, in order to communicate directly with the system. Also called the *ATTN* key. Sometimes called the *INTERRUPT* key.
- PFn:** This is one of the programmable function keys (PF1-PF8) of the keyboard. Also called the *F* key.

For 3101-like operation information, see the description in the corresponding manual.



CUSTOMER ID: ..... 3720-1 SERIAL NUMBER: xxxxx

ENTER PASSWORD ==>

Figure 1-3. The 3720 Console Password Entry Panel

## How to Start, Select, and Perform a MOSS-3720 Function

The connection to MOSS can be:

- Local or remote, by the customer, using a 3101-like console (see the *3720/3721 Operator's Guide*, GA33-0065).
- Remote, by the service personnel, with or without RETAIN (see page 1-10).
- Local, by the service personnel (see page 1-12).

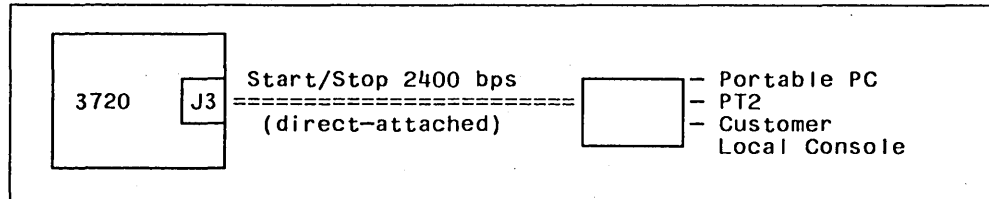


Figure 1-4. Onsite Service By Product Support CE

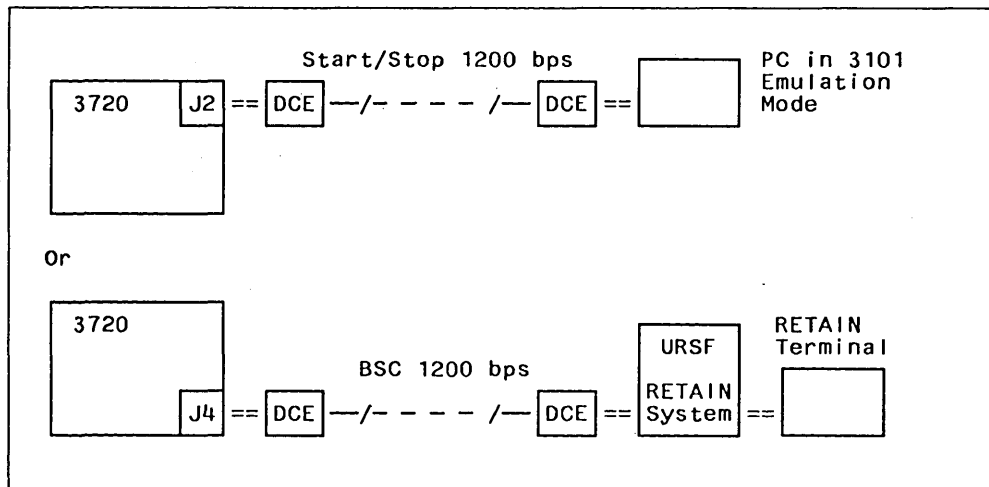


Figure 1-5. Remote Service By Product Support CE

---

## Modem (DCE) Requirements for the Remote Console

This section will only explain the requirements for modems connected to the remote console.

The requirements for the other modems (URSF or 3720 side) are explained in the latest edition of the *3720 Configuration Guide*, GA33-0061.

### Modem Transmission Standards

Modem with auto-answer and compatible with:

- IBM 5841 or equivalent (compatible with Bell 212-A) or IBM 5842 at 1200 bps or equivalent (CCITT V.22 bis) in the USA and Canada
- CCITT V.22 alternate B or V.22 bis (1200 bps) in other countries

---

## Control Panel

### Modem Operating Characteristics

- Asynchronous transmission
- Duplex operation
- Connection over a switched line
- Transmission speed: 1200 bps
- Ten bits per character
- Even parity for auto-dialing
- Talk/data switch for manual dialing
- Transmission in block mode
- Auto-answer is not used

#### Notes:

1. The modem at the 3720 end must be set to auto-answer, and have the auto-disconnect feature.
2. **Manual dialing is recommended** (with talk/data switch).

### Example of 5841 Modem Switch Setting

The example below sets the switches of an IBM 5841 modem at the remote console site. (The modem at the 3720 site, if it is a 5841, should be set in the same way.)

Switch 1: ON; RSLD (Received Line Signal Detector)  
Switch 2: OFF; (not used)  
Switch 3: OFF; Transmit Timing not applicable  
Switch 4: ON; Asynchronous mode  
Switch 5: ON; DTR (Data Terminal Ready)  
Switch 6: OFF; Transmit Clock not applicable  
Switch 7: ON; RTS (Request to Send)  
Switch 8: OFF; DSR (Data Set Ready)

---

## Remote Connection to MOSS (without RETAIN)

### If RETAIN is Available

All explanations on how to use URSF via RETAIN are given in the *3720 RETAIN URSF Guide*, ZZ33-7001.

The connection must be made through the *remote support facility (RSF) port* of the 3720. This connection could be used to run MOSS functions or send files (MCF or patch) onto the MOSS disk. Note that the connection of RETAIN to MOSS requires that no other console be using MOSS, and that MOSS be active.

### If RETAIN is not Available

The remote connection to MOSS should be via a switched line to the customer's *remote console port*. This is the same port the customer would use for the connection of a remote 3101-like console to run MOSS functions.

The requirements and procedures are fully described below.

### Remote Connection Procedure

1. Request the customer's permission to connect to the MOSS of the 3720.
2. Request the *remote maintenance password*.
3. Have the customer's operator log off any local or remote console that would still be using MOSS.
4. Make sure that MOSS is active (otherwise request a MOSS IML from the 3720 control panel).
5. Set the power on switch of the console to *ON*.
6. Set up the console as required:
  - If it is a PC: load the 3101 emulation program and set the required operating conditions (define the transmission parameters, or use the ones already defined as described in "Setting the Operating Conditions for an IBM PC" on page 1-12).
  - If it is a 3161, 3163, or 3164: set the console to 3101 mode and set the required operating conditions (define the transmission parameters, or use the ones already defined as described in "Setting the Operating Conditions for an IBM 3161/3163" on page 1-14).
  - If it is a 3101 Model 23: set the required operating conditions by setting the setup switches as follows (u = up, d = down):

12345678	12345678	12345678	12345678
-----	-----	-----	-----
uuuu uu	uu uu	uuu uu	u u u u
d d	d d dd	d dd	d d d d

7. Power on the modem

What the modem should be, and how the modem switches should be set is explained in "Modem (DCE) Requirements for the Remote Console" on page 1-9.

8. Dial manually, **using the telephone**, the number corresponding to the remote port of the 3720 through the switched network.

When you receive the ring back tone, wait until you hear the answer tone, then set your modem to data mode and hang up.

9. The **Copyright** panel is displayed, then, when you press *SEND*, the **Password** panel is displayed (see Figure 1-3 on page 1-7).

10. From this panel:

- Type the *remote maintenance password* given to you by the customer, and press **SEND**.

**Note:** This password must have been set previously by the customer, and activated:

- **permanently**, in which case you may connect to MOSS several times, using the same password, or
- **temporarily**, in which case, if you want to connect a second time to MOSS, the customer must first reactivate the remote maintenance password, using option 6 or 7 of the password update panel.

If you enter an incorrect password, you are invited to re-enter the password, and at the third unsuccessful attempt, the terminal is disconnected from MOSS.

- Once the correct password is entered, the **3720 function menu** panel is displayed (Figure 1-8 on page 1-15).

## Local Connection to MOSS by Service Personnel

If no customer console is available, the local connection to MOSS by service personnel should be made using a PT2 or a portable PC.

If MOSS is down, use the 3720 control panel: see the *3720 Maintenance Information Procedures* manual (MIP).

1. If using the IBM console (PC or PT2), make sure that the customer's remote console is disconnected from MOSS: Have the customer's operator type **OFF** in the *SIA* field of any MOSS panel, then press **SEND**.
2. Connect the console to the *Local console port* of the 3720, that is, out of the three, the middle one (02D-J3).

**Note:** For the PT2 and the portable PC, do not forget to add the 'stub' cable, P/N 7 837 400, to the console cable.

3. Place the *MOSS CE Switch 3* (the third from the top), in the **ON** position.
4. Set the power on switch of the console to **ON**.
5. Set up the console as required:
  - If it is a PC: load the 3101 emulation program and set the required operating conditions (define the transmission parameters, or use the ones already defined as described in 1-12).
  - If it is a PT2: load the 3101 emulation program and set the required operating conditions for the 3720, following the instructions displayed on the PT2 panel.
  - If it is a 3161, 3163, or 3164: set the console to 3101 mode and set the required operating conditions (define the transmission parameters, or use the ones already defined as described in 1-14).
  - If it is a 3101 Model 23, set the required operating conditions by setting the setup switches as follows (u = up, d = down):

12345678	12345678	12345678	12345678
-----	-----	-----	-----
uuuu uu	uu uu	uuu uu	uuu uuu
d d	d d dd	d dd	d d

**Note:** For all types of console, the transmission speed must be set to 2400 bps.

6. IML the MOSS
  - a. Set the *CA switches* to the state of the CA lamps.
  - b. Set the Panel-Console switch to *panel*.
  - c. Set the Function select switch to the *MOSS IML* position.
  - d. Press *Function Start*.

The IML of MOSS takes place (shown by changes in the value of the hexadecimal display), and, after a few seconds (up to a minute), the **Copyright** panel is displayed, then, when you press **SEND**, the **3720 maintenance function menu** panel is displayed.

## Setting the Operating Conditions for an IBM PC

If you have an IBM PC 5150, 5160, 5155, or 5170, select the required operating condition for the 3101 emulation mode by using the IBM PC Emulation Program.

See *IBM 3101 Emulation Program*, 6024042, for details on how to create or modify the parameters of your PC to emulate a 3101.

## Procedure

1. Load the 3101 emulation program, if not already on the disk/diskette of your PC.
2. Type *SETUP* to call the setup program.  
A menu with 3 options will be displayed:
  - 1 - Select a specification file
  - 2 - Modify the specification file
  - 3 - Create a specification file
3. If it is the first time:
  - a. Choose option 3 (create), and answer all questions as follows:

Question	Default	Enter
LINE SPEED (baud rate) to be used?	300	1200/2400 *
BLOCK MODE ? (Y=Block N=Character)	N	Y
PARITY ? (1=Odd 2=Even 3=Mark 4=Space)	2	2
STOP BITS ? (1 or 2)	1	2
AUTOMATIC LINE FEED ? (Y=Yes)	N	Y
CARRIAGE RETURN ? (Y=CR N=CR-LF)	Y	Y
NULL SUPPRESS ? (Y=Yes)	Y	Y
CHARACTER SENT AT END OF MESSAGE ? (1=ETX 2=CR 3=EOT 4=XOFF)	2	4
SCROLLING ? (Y=Yes)	Y	N

\* Set speed to 1200 for remote console, 2400 for local console.

Figure 1-6. Parameters Defining the MOSS-PC Transmission

- b. Type only the parameters that are different from the default values.
  - c. Give a file name to the set of specifications.
4. If it is **not** the first time: Choose option 1, and give the name of the specification file already created (or modified).
5. Type: **terminal**.

## Setting the Operating Conditions for an IBM 3161/3163

*IBM 3161/3163 ASCII Display Station description*, GA18-2310, gives all details on how to create or modify the parameters of your 3161/3163 terminal.

### Procedure

1. Press the Setup key.

The **SETUP MENU** will be displayed.

2. Update the fields as shown in Figure 1-7:

- Set machine mode to IBM 3101.
- Keep the operating mode in block mode, that is, block and half-duplex operation.
- Keep line control to RS232C (equivalent to CCITT V.24).
- Set line speed to 1200 (2400 for local console).
- Set parity to EVEN.
- Set turnaround character to DC3 (X'19').
- Set Stop bit to 2 (two stop bits for the console provide a long stop that will handle low quality transmissions).

**Note:** Word length, response delay, break signal, and terminal ID have values set for the 3161. These values cannot be modified.

Machine Mode	IBM 3101	
Operating Mode	BLOCK	
	Main Port	Aux. Port
Interface	RS232C	
Line Control	PRTS	
Line Speed (Bps)	1200	1200
Parity	EVEN	EVEN
Turnaround character	DC3 (X'19')	
Stop Bit	2	2
Word Length (bits)	7	7
Response Delay (ms)	100	
Break signal (ms)	500	
Terminal ID	xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx	

Figure 1-7. Setting the Operating Conditions on a 3161/3163

3. Press the Select key.

The **SELECT MENU** will be displayed.

4. Modify the SCROLL field to OFF. All other values are default values, and need not be changed. The select line must display the following:

SELECT: SCROLL=OFF RETURN=CR LINE WRAP=ON AUTO LF=ON SEND=PAGE NULL SUPP=ON



## Accessing MOSS Functions by Service Personnel

You have reached MOSS by one of the following means:

- In remote mode by entering the correct *remote maintenance password* on the **Password** panel.
- In local and disk mode, where MOSS is IMLed with the *MOSS IML* rotary position, AND with the MOSS CE Switch 3 set *ON* (in which case the logon process is bypassed).
- In local and diskette mode, where MOSS is IMLed with the *DISKETTE MODE* rotary position, AND with the MOSS CE Switch 3 set *ON* (in which case the logon process is bypassed).

In all cases the **3720 function menu** panel is displayed (see Figure 1-8).

MACHINE STATUS AREA (MSA)

CUSTOMER ID: ..... 3720-1 SERIAL NUMBER: xxxxx

----- MAINTENANCE MODE -----

SYSTEM INPUT AREA (SIA) ==> <----- SELECTION MESSAGE AREA (45) ----->

T:TERMINATE OFF: LOGOFF PF1: MOVE TO SIA PF2: CCU FNCTN PF3: ALARM

CONF DATA SET.....: CDF	LINE DESCR FILE...: LDF	MACHINE LVL TABLE: MLT
CNTRL PROGM PROC...: C	LINE INTERF DPLY..: LID	MICROCODE FIXES...: MCF
DISK FUNCTIONS.....: DF	LINE THRESHOLD...: LTH	PANEL FUNCTIONS...: PAF
EVENT LOG DISPLAY..: E	LINK IPL PORTS...: LKP	PASSWORDS.....: P
IML MOSS.....: IML	LINK TEST.....: LT	PORT SWAP FILES...: PS
IML ONE SCANNER...: IS	LOAD LK TEST REQ.: LOQ	TOKEN-RING INTR...: TRI
IPL 3720.....: IPL	LOAD LK TEST RESP: LOS	WRAP TEST.....: WT

BER CORRELATION...: BC	MODULE DISPLAY...: MD	TRSS FUNCTIONS...: TRS
DUMP DISPLAY/DEL...: DD	MOSS STORE DPLY...: MS	TSS FUNCTIONS....: TS
DIAGNOSTICS.....: DG		

Figure 1-8. The 3720 Function Menu Panel (Service Mode)

## Requesting a Function from the 3720 Function Menu

1. Press PF1 to place the cursor in the System Input Area (if the cursor is not already there).
2. Type the acronym corresponding to the function requested (for example /S for IML one scanner).
3. Press **SEND**.

The panel corresponding to the function requested will be displayed.

Figure 1-9 lists the manuals, sections or pages that give all details concerning each function available from the **3720 function menu** panel.

**Note:** *ES* means *3720/3721 Communication Controllers Extended Services*; *SG* means *Service Guide*: this manual.

3720 function menu	Details in
BER CORRELATION...: BC	SG only, Chapter 2.
CNTRL PROG PROC.: C	ES only
CONF DATA SET....: CDF	ES and SG, Chapter 8.
DISK FUNCTIONS....: DF	ES and SG, Chapter 10.
EC Installation	
Save	
Restore	
Disk Init and format	
Diskette format	
Position disk arm	
Repair disk	
EVENT LOG DISPLAY: E	SG, Chapter 2.
IML MOSS.....: IML	ES
IML ONE SCANNER...: IS	SG, Chapter 12.
IPL 3720.....: IPL	SG, Chapter 12.
LINE DEF FILE....: LDF	ES
LINE INTERF DSPLY: LID	ES only
LINK IPL PORTS....: LKP	ES only
LINK TEST.....: LT	ES
LINE THRESHOLD...: LTH	ES only
LOAD LK TST REQ...: LOQ	ES, Chapter 12
LOAD LK TST RESP.: LOS	ES, Chapter 12
MACHINE LVL TABLE: MLT	ES, Chapter 12
MICROCODE FIXES...: MCF	
Microcode fixes	ES and SG, Chapter 6.
Microcode Patches	SG only, Chapter 7.
PASSWORDS.....: P	ES (also customer identification)
PROGR. LINE SPEED: CDF	ES (for customer only)
PANEL FUNCTIONS...: PAF	ES and SG, Chapter 9.
PORT SWAP FILE....: PS	ES only
NTRI FUNCTIONS....: TRI	ES only
WRAP TEST.....: WT	ES and SG, Chapter 12.
DIAGNOSTICS.....: DG	Diag. desc. and SG, Chapter 3.
DUMP/DISPLAY/DEL.: DD	SG only, Chapter 5.
Hex display of dumps	
Dump/BER file Delete	
MOSS STORE DPLY...: MS	SG only, Chapter 5.
MODULE DISPLAY....: MD	SG only, Chapter 5.
TRSS FUNCTIONS....: TRS	SG only, Chapter 11.
TSS FUNCTIONS.....: TS	SG only, Chapter 4.

Figure 1-9. Where to Find 3720 Function Menu Information

## Accessing CCU Functions

Press PF2 when the **3720 function menu** panel is displayed.

The **CCU function menu** panel is displayed (see below).

MACHINE STATUS AREA (MSA)

CUSTOMER ID: ..... 3720-1 SERIAL NUMBER: xxxxx

----- MAINTENANCE MODE -----

SYSTEM INPUT AREA (SIA) ==> <---- SELECTION MESSAGE AREA (45) ----->

T:TERMINATE OFF: LOGOFF PF1: MOVE TO SIA PF2: CCU FNCTN PF3: ALARM

CCU FUNCTION MENU

AC/BT PARAMETERS.: ABP	DISPLAY LONG.....: DL	RESET CCU/LSSD.....: RCL
CCU STATE.....: CST	MOSS OFFLINE.....: MOF	SET ADDRESS COMP.: AC
CHL ADAPT STATE.: CH	MOSS ONLINE.....: MON	SET BRANCH TRACE.: BT
DATA EXCHANGE....: DEX	RESET ADDR COMP...: RAC	
DISPLAY ALTER....: DA	RESET BRANCH TRACE: RBT	

IMMEDIATE CCU FUNCTIONS

BYPASS CCU CHECK.: BCK	RESET CCU.....: RST	START CCU.....: S
BYPASS IOC CHECK.: BIK	RESET CCU CHECK...: RCK	STOP CCU.....: STP
CCU LVL3 INTRPT...: IL3	RESET IOC.....: RIO	STOP ON CCU CHECK.: SCK
CCU NORMAL MODE...: NM	RESET I-STEP.....: RI	STOP ON IOC CHECK.: SIK
CCU DATE/TIME.....: Q	SET I-STEP.....: SIP	

ALARM:

Figure 1-10. CCU Function Menu Panel (Customer and Service Mode)

This panel displays the list of all CCU functions, including the immediate CCU functions.

All functions are available to the service personnel as well as to the customer.

## Requesting a CCU Function

1. Press PF1 to place the cursor in the System Input Area (SIA) (if the cursor is not already there)
2. Type the acronym (for example DA for display alter) corresponding to the function requested
3. Press **SEND**

The result will be:

- Either a panel corresponding to the CCU function requested, or
- A message to acknowledge the execution of the request or an error message.

All details concerning each CCU function (panels and procedures) are given in various chapters of the *3720/3721 Extended Services* manual.

## Some Messages after a Function Selection

The messages listed below represent only some of the messages that could be displayed during a function (3720 or CCU).

Messages that are self-explanatory, or messages that do not require a specific action are not listed.

CCU FUNCTION STILL PENDING: A LOGOFF request is issued while a CCU function is still pending (address compare, branch trace, ...).

CCU NOW IN PROCESS MODE: Reply to command: RESET I-STEP.

3720 FUNCTION STILL PENDING: A LOGOFF request is issued while a 3720 function is still pending (wrap, TSS address compare, ...).

NOTHING TO TERMINATE: Reply to command: Reply to a 'T' command when no function has been selected.

REENTER: Re-transmission required due to contention.

REMOTE CONSOLE CALLING: A remote operator tries to connect to MOSS while the local console is in use.

LOCAL CONSOLE CALLING: A local console operator tries to connect to MOSS while the remote console is in use.

---

## Leaving the MOSS (Log Off)

Before leaving the MOSS, **do not forget to update the alarm BER, if any**, as explained in "Updating the Service Information Field in Alarm BERs" on page 2-11.

### Leaving Procedure after Remote Connection

1. You must inform the customer (or whoever is at the 3720 location) that you are going to free the connection to MOSS.
2. Type *OFF* in the *SIA* field of the current panel, then press *SEND*.

**Note:** You may type *OFF* only when no function is active or pending, and the **3720 function menu** panel is displayed.

The procedure will then depend on the type of terminal through which the connection was started.

- If it is a PC with a 3101 emulation program or a 3101-like terminal, you are disconnected from MOSS, and the message **TERMINAL DISCONNECTED** is displayed in the middle of the console panel.
- If it is a RETAIN terminal, you return to the RETAIN/URSF application and you are disconnected from MOSS.

### Leaving Procedure after Local Connection

1. Type *OFF* in the *SIA* field of the current panel, then press *SEND*.  
**Note:** You may type *OFF* only when no function is active or pending, and the **3720 function menu** panel is displayed.
2. If it is a service console (portable PC or PT2), disconnect it from the local console port (second from the top).
3. Set the *CA switches* to the state of the *CA lamps*.
4. Set the *Console-Panel* switch in the *Panel* position.
5. Place the *MOSS CE Switch 3* (the third from the top), to the *Off* position.
6. IML the MOSS:
  - a. Set the Function select switch to the *MOSS IML* position.
  - b. Press *Function Start*.

**Note:** An IML requested from the console would display the maintenance function menu (the MOSS CE switch position is not sensed by an IML from the console).

7. Set the *Console-Panel* switch to the *Console* position.

At the end of the IML, if a console is connected and powered on, the **Copyright** panel is displayed. Then, when you press *SEND*, the **Password** panel is displayed, and the customer password may be entered.

**Warning:** YOU MUST SET THE MOSS CE SWITCH 3 OFF, otherwise MOSS can be accessed without a password.

## Machine Status Area

You are made permanently aware of the 3720 status by the information displayed on the first three lines of the operator console screen: the machine status area (MSA).

The first two lines of the MSA show CCU and MOSS information. The third one shows:

- Selected scanner information (service personnel only); *or*
- CCU/Scanner IPL information; *or*
- Token-ring adapter and TIC information

In all figures shown below, each letter is a key that refers to an explanation.

The MSA is updated every 500ms.

MSA with Scanner Information

a	b	c	d	e	f
g	h	i	j	k	l
m	n	o	p	q	

MSA with CCU/Scanner IPL Information

a	b	c	d	e	f		
g	h	i	j	k	l		
r		s	t	u	v	w	x

MSA with Token-Ring Adapter Information

a	b	c	d	e	f
g	h	i	j	k	l
mm	nn	oo	pp	qq	

Figure 1-11. MSA Fields

## MSA with Scanner and CCU/Scanner IPL Information

a	b	c	d	e	f
g	h	i	j	k	l
m	n	o	p	q	

### Field a

Field 'a' displays the CCU mode:

PROCESS: Normal processing.

I-STEP: Instruction step.

### Field b

Field 'b' displays the CCU check mode:

STOP-CCU-CHK: The system will stop on a CCU check (default or after function RESET BYPASS CCU CHECK).

BYP-CCU-CHK: You initiated function SET BYPASS CCU CHECK so the system will not stop on a CCU check.

### Field c

Field 'c' indicates whether MOSS is connected to the CCU control program:

MOSS-ONLINE: MOSS is connected to the CCU control program.

MOSS-OFFLINE: MOSS is not connected to the CCU control program.

MOSS-ALONE: MOSS is operational while the CCU control program is not loaded or no longer operational.

SERVICE-MODE: MOSS is in service mode (service personnel only).

The statuses of the MOSS after the different IMLs and IPLs are as follows:

After	MOSS Status	Hex Display
Initialization (general IPL)	MOSS-ONLINE	X'000'
MOSS IML	MOSS-ONLINE or MOSS-OFFLINE (CP loaded)	X'000' X'FEE'
	MOSS-ALONE (CP not loaded)	X'FEF'
CCU/Scanner IPL	MOSS-ONLINE	X'000'
STEP BY STEP IPL	MOSS-ONLINE	X'000'
BYPASS PHASE 1 IPL	MOSS-ONLINE	X'000'

### Field d

Field 'd' displays information on the CCU Address Compare (AC) function:

AC: (highlighted) The Address Compare function is active.

If you selected MOSS INTERRUPT=Y and/or CCU STOP=Y when defining the address compare, the following is displayed:

AC HIT: (highlighted) A single or double address compare is successful.

## Field e

Field 'e' is updated each time an output X'71' instruction is executed, by the control program, for example, when using the CCU data exchange function or the control program procedures, or during 3720 initialization.

Output X'71' contents are buffered. If the buffers are overrun due to intensive output, some data may be lost; however, the last value in output will be displayed.

X71=xxxxxx: Contents of CCU X'71' output register

X71=ERROR: Error when accessing the register. Register contents cannot be displayed.

At initialization time, field 'e' displays: X71:xyyyzz

where xx are the 3720 initialization flags with the following meaning:

- 01 = IPL request detected on a link-attached 3720.
- 02 = IPL request detected on a channel-attached 3720.
- 05 = Dump in progress on a link-attached 3720.
- 06 = Dump in progress on a channel-attached 3720.
- 09 = CP load in progress on a link-attached 3720.
- 0A = CP load in progress on a channel-attached 3720.
- 11 = Remote Power Off (RPO) command is detected.
- 20 = CLDP abend before an IPL request detected on a channel- or link-attached 3720.
- 21 = CLDP abend on an IPL request detected on a link-attached 3720.
- 22 = CLDP abend on an IPL request detected on a channel-attached 3720.
- 25 = CLDP dump abend on a link-attached 3720 dump.
- 26 = CLDP dumpabend on a channel-attached 3720 dump.
- 29 = CLDP abend on a link-attached 3720 CP.
- 2A = CLDP CP abend on a channel-attached 3720 CP.
- 40 = Load dump request from disk.
- 44 = Dump to disk in progress.
- 48 = CP load from disk in progress.
- 60 = CLDP request from disk abend.
- 64 = CLDP from disk abend.
- 68 = CLDP/CP from disk abend.

**Note:** CP = control program, CLDP = control program loader/dump

where yyyz indicates the IPL port address. This encoded address is displayed in decoded form in field w, preceded by CA or L (see field w).

except when xx = 00, in which case:

- yy indicates the link ports defined in the Link IPL port table.
- zz indicates the link IPL ports that are presently enabled.

## Field f

Field 'f' is displayed, along with field 'l', when the CCU status is STOP X'70', STOP PGM, STOP BT, STOP AC, or HARDSTOP (see field g).

LAR=xxxxxx OP=xxxx C=x (field f)  
IAR=xxxxxx ILVL=xxxx Z=x (field l)

LAR=xxxxxx: Address of the last executed instruction.

OP=xxxx: Last executed instruction.



C=x:                    Value of the C-latch (0 or 1).  
 IAR=xxxxxx:        Address of the next instruction to be executed.  
 ILVL=xxxx:        Active CCU interrupt levels.  
 Z=x:                    Value of the Z-latch (0 or 1).  
 CCU INTERRUPTS DISABLED    (field f)  
     nothing displayed        (field l)

No interrupts can be received from the CCU:

- During a MOSS IML from the control panel, just after power on.
- While performing CCU IPL to avoid automatic CCU re-IPL in case of HARDCHECK (see field g).
- While mounting a new diskette (service personnel only).
- While performing some utility programs (service personnel only) to prevent interference with the utility program. All communications between the CCU and MOSS are delayed. For example, a BER generated by the control program is kept until the utility program ends and MOSS is back online.

CCU REGISTERS        (in field f)  
 NOT ACCESSIBLE     (in field l)

Appropriate registers cannot be read, so it is impossible to display LAR, OP, C, IAR, ILVL, and Z information.

## Field g

Field 'g' displays the CCU status:

RUN:                Instructions are being executed or data is being transferred.

RESET:             The control program stopped since you initiated function RESET CCU; to restart the CCU, perform an IPL.

HARDCHK:          The control program stopped on a hardcheck error. An automatic re-IPL is attempted. In certain cases however, (for example if the hardcheck occurs during a general IPL) there is no re-IPL.

HARDSTOP:        You selected the CCU check reset function to reset the CCU check condition. To restart, select the CCU Start function from the 3720 function menu or press PF6=CCU START or PF6=S if displayed on the screen.

IPL-REQ:          A CCU IPL was requested and is in progress.

STOP-X70:        The control program stopped on an output X'70' instruction executed by the control program.

STOP-PGM:        The control program stopped because you initiated function CCU STOP or function SET I-STEP.

STOP-BT:         The control program stopped because the branch trace function that you initiated with CCU STOP has become deactivated.

STOP-AC:         The control program stopped because the address compare function that you initiated with CCU STOP (CCU ACTION=S) is successful.

## Field h

Field 'h' shows whether the 3720 will stop on an IOC check.

BYP-IOC-CHK: The system will not stop on an IOC check. (default or after a RESET IOC CHECK STOP).

STOP-IOC-CHK: You initiated the function SET IOC CHECK STOP to force the system stop on an IOC check.

## Field i

Field 'i' displays the last MOSS check code (see the *Maintenance Information Reference* manual, SY33-2040).

LASTMCHK=xxx last MOSS check code

Simultaneously, additional information is provided, such as Alarms/Alerts, MOSS inoperative lamp.

## Field j

Field 'j' displays BT (highlighted) when the branch trace function is active.

## Field k

Field 'k' is updated each time an output X'72' instruction is executed by the control program. For example, when using the CCU data exchange function, the control program procedures, or the 3720 initialization.

Output X'72' contents are buffered. If the buffers are overrun due to intensive outputting, some data may be lost; however, the last value outputted will be displayed.

X72=xxxxxx: Contents of CCU X'72' output register.

X72=00xxxx: Control program load/dump abend code.

X72=ERROR: Error when accessing the register. Register contents cannot be displayed.

## Field l

Field 'l' is displayed along with field f when the CCU is in the STOP state. (See field 'f' description).

## Scanner Information (in MSA)

### Field m

Field 'm' displays information on the selected scanner:

NO SCANNER SELECTED: You selected a scanner function before selecting a scanner.

SCANNER XX yyyyyyyyyyy:

Where xx is the number of the selected scanner (1, 3, or 4), and yyyyyyyyyyy is any of the following:

CONNECTED: The scanner is operational and under control of the CCU control program.

INITIALIZED: The control code is loaded and the front-end adapter is operational.

INOPERATIVE:	The scanner is inoperative, or the CCU is not in RUN status.
DISCTD-STOP:	Disconnected-stop: The control code is no longer under control of the CCU control program, either after a STOP command or after a scanner address compare hit.
DISCTD-GO:	Disconnected-go: You entered the GO command while in status DISCTD/STOP. The scanner remains disconnected but control code execution continues.
RESET:	You entered the RESET command, and you may initiate an IML or a DUMP.
UNKNOWN-MODE:	The scanner is selected but it is impossible to identify its status.

## Field n

Field 'n' displays the scanner option:

IML:	A scanner IML is being started.
DUMP:	A dump is in progress.
SST abcde:	One or more snapshot traces have been started. a = 1 if trace 1 is active, b = 1 if trace 2 is active, ... a = E if trace 1 fails, b = E if trace 2 is fails, ...

## Field o

Field 'o' shows that the scanner address compare function is:

HIT-FS:	Successful on I-fetch, load, or store.
HIT-RW:	Successful on read or write.
ERROR:	Successful but an error is encountered while performing the action you specified.

## Fields o and p

Fields 'o and p' display the scanner address compare parameters that you specified:

AC xxxx yyyy zzzzzzz

where:

xxxx:	Is the address
yyyy:	Is the type of access: F for I-fetch or data-fetch S for data store R for cycle steal read W for cycle steal write

zzzzzzz:	is the action: DISPLAY ALTER STOP OP-MSG (no action)
----------	--

## Fields p and q

Fields 'p and q' display the function for which you requested a delay in the execution (scanner display/alter functions):

DELAYED-ALTER  
or  
DELAYED-DISPLAY

The wait status of the CCU is now displayed and refreshed into the MSA.

## CCU/Scanner IPL Information (in MSA)

CCU/scanner IPL information instead of scanner information is displayed on the third line.

A short time after successful completion of the IPL, the third line of the MSA is cleared if the IPL was requested from the control panel or from the host. If the IPL was requested from the operator console (function IPL CCU/TSS), the third line is cleared when selecting terminate function (T in SIA)).

a	b	c	d	e	f		
g	h	i	j	k	l		
r		s	t	u	v	w	x

### Field r

IPL: Shows that a CCU IPL is started.

### Field s

PHASE 1: Indicates the start of phase 1 (CCU test and initialization). This field is blank when phase 1 is bypassed.

### Field t

PHASE 2: Shows the start of phase 2 (load from the disk and start the control program loader/dump). This field is always present.

### Field u

PHASE 3: Shows the start of phase 3 (load and initialize the scanners).

### Field v

PHASE 4: Shows the start of phase 4 (load from the host and initialize the control program). This field is always present.

### Field w

Field 'w' displays one of the following:

CA IPL DETECTED ON CA x: The control program loading/dumping is started on a channel-attached 3720. x is the channel adapter number.

CONTROL PROGRAM LOADED: The control program is loaded.

CP SAVE IN PROGRESS ON DISK: The control program is being saved on the 3720 disk.

DUMP IN PROGRESS ON CA x: A control program dump is being taken on a channel-attached 3720. The progression of the dump is indicated in MSA field k which displays control program storage addresses. x is the channel adapter number.

DUMP IN PROGRESS ON DISK: A control program dump is being taken on the 3720 disk.

DUMP IN PROGRESS ON L xxx: A control program dump is being taken on a link-attached 3720. The progression of the dump is indicated in MSA field k which displays control program storage addresses. xxx is the decimal telecommunication line address.

ENABLED PORTS CA xx L xxxxxxxx (3720 Model 1/11): or

ENABLED PORTS L xxxxxxxx (3720 Model 2/12): Indicates which channel adapters or link IPL ports are enabled. x can be either Y or N. In the CA field, Ys indicate which channel adapters are enabled, and Ns which channel adapters are not enabled. The positions of the Ys and Ns give the channel adapter number.

In the 'I' field, Ys indicate which link IPL ports are enabled. N is used for the link IPL ports not enabled. The positions of the Ys and Ns give the position of the Link IPL port in the link IPL port table.

IPL CANCELED: The 3720 initialization is canceled by:

- The operator (immediate terminate function).
- Operator console power-off when the IPL was requested from the console.
- The operator console switching from normal mode to test mode.
- MOSS automatic re-IML during a CCU/scanner step-by-step IPL, or
- Two MOSS automatic re-IMLs during a CCU/scanner IPL.

IPL CHECK xxx: The IPL ends abnormally. The check code (xxx) is also displayed on the hex display of the control panel.

IPL CHECK F1B CLDP ABEND xxxx: The IPL ends abnormally. xxxx is the hexadecimal control program loader/dump abend code.

IPL COMPLETE: The IPL is successfully completed.

IPL COMPLETE + ERRORS: The IPL is complete although an error has been encountered. If the error comes from a scanner, alarm A11 is displayed. For any other intermittent errors (for example, diskette errors) no alarm is displayed. The 3720 should run normally.

LINK IPL DETECTED ON L xxx: The control program loading/dumping is started on a link-attached 3720.

LINK TEST PROGRAM ABEND: A hardware error occurred at Phase 3, while loading the stand-alone link test.

LINK TEST PROGRAM LOADED: The link test program is loaded.

LOAD IN PROGRESS ON CA x: The control program is being loaded on a channel-attached 3720. The progression of the load is indicated in MSA field k where CCU storage addresses are displayed. x is the channel adapter number.

LOAD IN PROGRESS FROM DISK: The control program is being loaded from the 3720 disk.

LOAD IN PROGRESS ON L xxx: The control program is being loaded on a link-attached 3720. The progression of the load is indicated in MSA field k where CCU storage addresses are displayed. xxx is the decimal telecommunication line address.

RPO DETECTED ON L xxx: The remote power off (RPO) command is detected on telecommunication line xxx. xxx is the decimal telecommunication line address.

SCANNER(S) NOT IMLED: xxxx: Indicates that one or more scanners are not IMLED. xxxx consists of four hexadecimal digits (16 bits). Each bit corresponds to a scanner (CS) number.

## Field x

IPL STOP: Indicates that the IPL stopped at the beginning of a phase or on the operator's request (PF4=STOP).

## Token-Ring Information in MSA

When the TRSS services or the Token-Ring Interconnection function is active, line 3 of the MSA contains information relative to the TRM card and selected TIC cards.

a	b	c	d	e	f
g	h	i	j	k	l
mm	nn	oo	pp	qq	

## Field mm

Displays the TRA number (# 02 for the 3720 Models 11 and 12). Indicates that the TRA has been selected (TRSS or TRI function).

## Field nn

Displays the TRA mode. This field is updated after the TRA selection (option 1 in **TRSS function selection** panel, page 11-2).

**Note:** If field f indicates CCU INTERRUPTS DISABLED, the TRA mode has no meaning.

The possible modes are:

- CONNECT:** The TRA is operational and is under NTRI control. The control program handles all interrupts (except in the case of an MIOH error).
- The PIO DISABLE and the DISCONNECT bits in the TRM Level 1 Error Status are OFF.
- DISCONNECT:** The TRA does not run under the control of the control program but under the control of the MOSS microcode. MOSS handles all interrupts and PIOs to/from the TIC.
- The PIO DISABLE and the DISCONNECT bits in the TRM Level 1 Error Status are OFF.
- UNKNOWN:** A non-recoverable error occurred during the connection/disconnection process, or an MIOC/IOC error occurred while getting level 1 error status during TRA selection. Connect/Disconnect may be re-tried.

## Field oo

Is the TIC selected.

TIC n: Shows the number of the TIC selected (n is 1 or 2). The correspondence between TRA, line address is the following: TRA is #02, TIC #1 has line address 016, TIC #2 has line address 017. This field is updated after a TIC selection (see **TRSS Functions** panel, page 11-3).

## Field pp

Field 'pp' displays the current mode of the selected TIC. This field is updated after a TIC selection or a refresh of the screen display. (see *TRI Functions* in *3720 Extended Services* manual.)

Each of the two possible TICs must be in one of seven modes (as reported by NTRI):

IDLE: The TIC has not yet been reset by NTRI.

RESET: The TIC has been reset by NTRI but not yet initialized.

INITIALIZED: The TIC has been initialized but not yet OPEN or DISABLED. Initialization parameters have been passed to the TIC by NTRI.

OPEN: The TIC has been inserted into the token-ring and is in normal operation. Open parameters have been passed and receive and transmit operations have been started.

CLOSED: The TIC has been opened since initialization, but has since been closed (by the host).

FROZEN: An error was detected and the following actions were taken by NTRI

- Interrupts from this TIC are disabled.
- DMA from this TIC is disabled.
- The TIC is reset.

DISABLED: The associated TRA has been disconnected by MOSS. NTRI will send no PIO to this TIC.

(blank): There is no TIC mode if NTRI is not online.

The TIC mode is derived from the NTRI MAC layer status obtained from NTRI. The following table gives the correspondence.

Medium Access Control (MAC) Status	TIC Mode
Idle	Idle
TIC resetting hard	Idle
TIC resetting soft	Idle
Initialization list transfer	Reset
Initialized	Initialized
Open started	Initialized
Receive initialization	Initialized
Transmit initialization	Initialized
Started	Open
Transmit in progress	Open
Close in progress	Open
Closed	Closed
Frozen	Frozen
Disconnected	Disabled

Figure 1-12. TIC Mode and MAC Status

## Field qq

NTRI OFFLINE indicator:

Indicates that:

- At the IPL of NCP, NTRI was not available and did not pass necessary TRSS information to MOSS, or
- An error has occurred when trying to access NTRI control blocks needed by TRSS services.

Several functions which depend upon NTRI will not be available. This field is updated after each function selection of the TRSS secondary menu. (See **TRSS function selection** panel, page 11-2.)



---

## Chapter 2. Analyzing BERs (Box Event Records)

### Box Event Record Generation

Each error occurrence, either in case of intermittent failure or in case of a 3720 down (controller re-IPL), is processed by the event logging procedure of the MOSS.

### Event Logging Procedure

BERs are handled by a set of functions that:

- Count the event and error occurrences
- Time stamp the BER
- Record the BER on a MOSS disk data file (CHGCIL)
- Generate an error signal (such as ALERT or ALARM)

The BERs are created from error information supplied either by NCP/EP, by the MOSS itself, or during IFTs.

#### Notes:

1. If the MOSS is offline or not operational, NCP/EP stores the error information in the check record pool (CRP) located in main storage.
2. When the disk is not operational, the MOSS keeps the BERs in the 1024-byte buffer in MOSS RAM.
3. No BER logging takes place in *Diskette Mode* (see "Diskette Mode" on page 12-6).

### Automatic BER Analysis

This MOSS facility translates the BER associated with the last alert issued into a specific eight-digit reference code that characterizes the 3720 hardware error, the environment anomaly, or the most probable microcode error.

### MOSS Consolidated BER

MOSS code packs I/O-related BERs into a *consolidated* BER: (Type 01, ID 85).

### Consolidated BER Example

If a MOSS level 0 occurs during a disk I/O operation related to a LOAD request from an application, a BER 0185 will be logged. This BER will contain:

- BER 0111, disk adapter
- BER 0103, CAC
- BER 0100, level 0

The BER 0185 will be displayed with the event description related to the latest BER put into BER 0185, and the **BER detail** panel will allow you to scroll to display the other BERs contained in BER 0185.

In the example above, the event description will refer to BER 0111, and the **BER detail** panel will allow you to display BER 0111, then to scroll to BER 0103, then BER 0100.

BER 0185 applies to the following accesses:

- File access

- NCP/EP access (Mailboxes)
- CCU access
- Display/Keyboard access

## BER Storage on Disk

The MOSS stores the BERs, prepared in the MOSS RAM, on the *wraparound* BER file on disk (CHGCIL) in order of arrival. The BER file (CHGCIL) can contain several hundred BERs (including *Consolidated BERs*).

When the BER file is full, the next BER to arrive overwrites the oldest BER (or BERs) in the BER file.

## Purpose of this Section

The purpose of this section is to explain *HOW TO DISPLAY*, using MOSS console, all types of BER panels (summary, list or detail).

This section gives also an explanation for all fields that appear on a BER panel and are common to all or most BER types.

Detailed and complete information concerning BERs can be found in Chapter *Box Event Records*, in the *Maintenance Information Reference* manual.

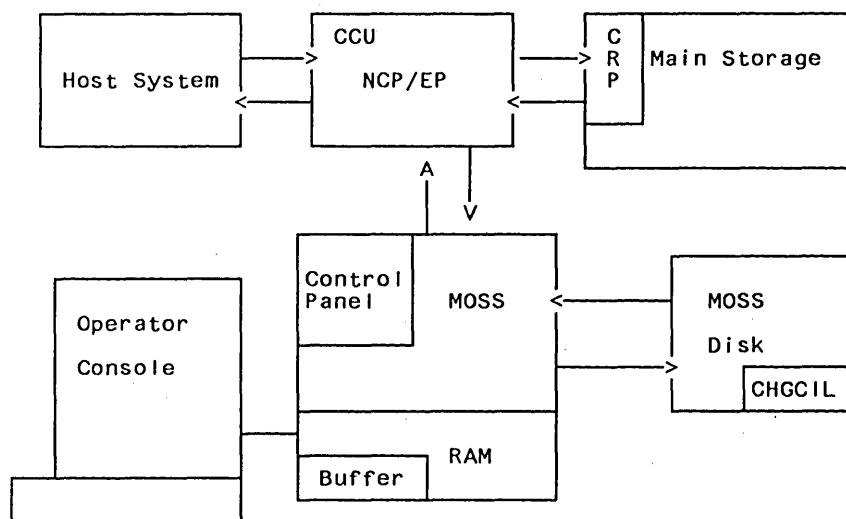


Figure 2-1. Error Log Overview

## BER Type and ID

All BERs are characterized by a **type** and an **ID**.

### BER Type

The type points to the general area of BER occurrence:

- 01: MOSS-related errors (plus errors/events recorded by MOSS when MOSS takes control of the box or operations such as CCU Hardcheck, scanner errors...)
- 10: Errors related to Channel Adapter operations
- 11: Errors related to Transmission Subsystem operations

- 12: Control Program exceptions (software errors detected by the hardware, or hardware errors corrupting software)
- 13: CCU-related errors when NCP/EP has control (excluding the CCU Hardcheck)
- 14: IOC Bus-related errors (when not possible to attribute them to a specific adapter)
- 15: Errors related to token-ring subsystem operations

## BER ID

When the BER is created by NCP/EP, the ID identifies the most probable cause of error (Control Program, Hardware, or Microcode) and the program level that recorded the error/event.

When the BER is created by MOSS, the ID identifies the origin of error or event (MOSS interrupt level, disk support, ...).

For MOSS BERs, the error categories are found in another field called MOSS CHECK Code or ERROR Code.

The Chapter describing BERs in the *Maintenance Information Reference* manual, gives all possible BER contents and layouts.

## Where to Find More BER Information

Display at console	This chapter
Host print request for BERs	ACF for NCP/SSP for the 3720 Diagnosis Guide Chapter "Printing NCP, MOSS, or CSP Dump"
BER format	"Maintenance Information Reference", Chapter "BERs".
BER save and purge	"Deleting Files", page 5-12.

Figure 2-2. Where to Find More BER Information

## BER Display Sequence

There are three kinds of BER display panels:

- BER summary
- BER list
- BER detail

When faultfinding, you should normally display the BER summary, then the BER list, and lastly the BER detail(s) appropriate to the fault. An example is given in Figure 2-3.

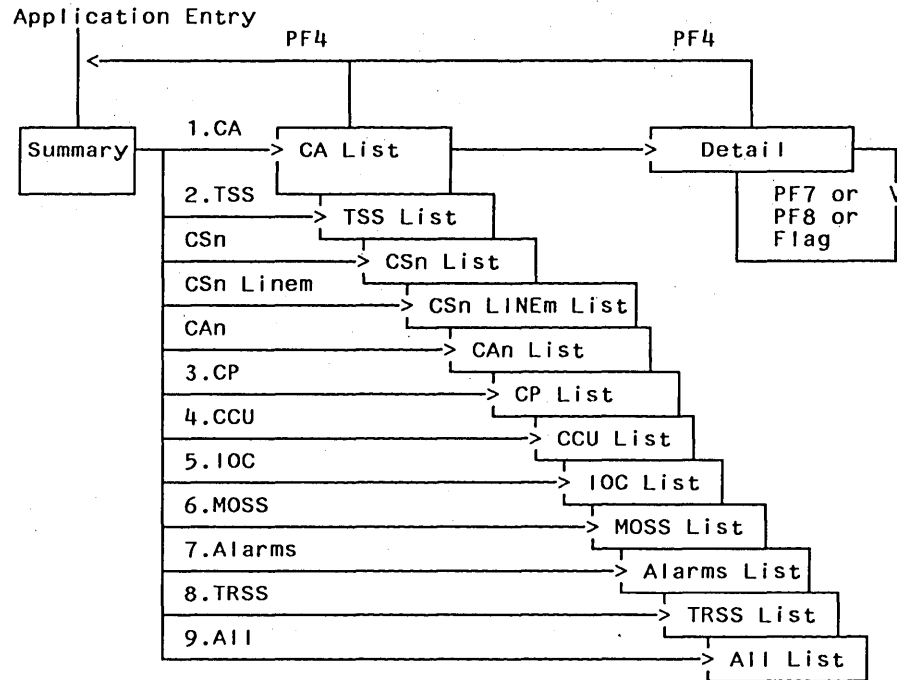


Figure 2-3. Sample of a BER Display Sequence

## Requesting the BER Display

You must first display the **3720 function menu** panel (first panel displayed after you entered the maintenance password on the **Password** panel).

1. Type **E** (for Event log display) in the **SIA**, then press **SEND**

The **BER summary** panel will be displayed (see Figure 2-4).

```

      MSA line 1
      MSA line 2
      MSA line 3
CUSTOMER ID: .....      3720-1      SERIAL NUMBER: xxxxx
----- MAINTENANCE MODE -----
FUNCTION ON SCREEN: EVENT LOG DISPLAY

SYSTEM INPUT AREA (SIA) ==>
T:TERMINATE  OFF: LOGOFF  PF1: MOVE TO SIA  PF2: CCU FNCTN  PF3: ALARM
                                BER SUMMARY
SEL# NAME                                TYPE  PENDING  DATE 1ST BER  TOTAL
                                BER      MM/DD HH:MM  IN FILE
  1  CA  (CHANNEL ADAPTERS)             10     0      04/23 20:38    0
  2  TSS (TRANSMISSION SUBSYSTEM)        11     5      04/23 20:38    5
  3  CP  (CONTROL PROGRAM)               12     0
  4  CCU (CENTRAL CONTROL UNIT)           13     0
  5  IOC (I/O CONTROL)                   14     0
  6  MOSS (MAINTENANCE OPERATOR SUBSYSTEM) 01     1      04/21 07:00    2
  7  ALARMS                              1      1      04/23 20:40    2
  8  TRSS (TOKEN-RING SUBSYSTEM)          15     0
  9  ALL (ALL FILE CONTENTS)              7
                                7
ENTER SEL# OR NAME ==>

```

Figure 2-4. BER Summary Panel (Sequence Example)

If you type **ALL** or **9** on the **BER summary** panel, a **BER list** panel is displayed (see example in Figure 2-5).

```

                                ALL  LIST                                TOTAL:9
SEL# DATE/TIME FLAG NAME      TYPE ID ERROR DESCRIPTION
  9  04/23 20:40  ALARMS                                A16 SCANNER 01 DOWN(LINE 0-27) RE-IML
  8  04/23 20:40  CS1 LINE31 11 98 PIO OUT ERROR
  7  04/23 20:39  CS1 LINE31 11 98 PIO OUT ERROR
  6  04/23 20:38  CS1 LINE31 11 98 PIO OUT ERROR
  5  04/23 20:38  CS1 LINE31 11 98 PIO OUT ERROR
  4  04/23 20:38  CS1 LINE31 11 B1 SCANNER COMMAND TIME OUT
  3  04/22 08:00 FF ALARMS                                A4 DISKETTE ERROR
  2  04/22 08:00 FF MOSS DISK  01 03 CRC ON READ DATA FILE:CHGPROC
  1  04/21 07:00  MOSS APPL  01 06 BER FILE DELETED
*** END OF FILE ***
- ENTER SEL# OR NAME ==>
PF4:BER SUMMARY  PF7:BACKWARD  PF8:FORWARD

```

Figure 2-5. BER List Panel (Sequence Example)

In service (maintenance) mode, if you type **4** (SEL #) on the **BER list** panel, a **BER detail** panel, is displayed (see example in Figure 2-6 on page 2-6).

BER DETAIL	
SEL#:00004	FLAG:00 DATE:04/23 TIME:20:38 TYPE:11 ID:B1 LOST: CP-ABEND:
CS1	LINE31 SCANNER COMMAND TIME OUT
F:	10000000
TA:10	TD:1F NW:DCC0 LNVT:08F0 LCS:00
PSA:DA06	0000 0000 0000 0191 0000 0000 0000 0592 0800 0000 0000 0191 0000
OVERRIDE FLAG VALUE WITH NEW HEXADECIMAL VALUE PF4: BER SUMMARY   PF5: BER LIST   PF7: PREVIOUS   PF8: NEXT	

Figure 2-6. BER Detail Panel (Sequence Example)

This panel contains the coded service information appropriate to the type of BER.

**Note:** If you use the customer password, the panel that will be displayed will not contain coded service information, and the following **BER detail** panel is displayed (see example in Figure 2-7).

BER DETAIL	
SEL#:00004	FLAG:00 DATE:04/23 TIME:20:38 TYPE:11 ID:B1 LOST:ddd CP-ABEND:hhhh
CS1	LINE31 SCANNER COMMAND TIME OUT
PF1: BER SUMMARY   PF2: BER LIST   PF4: PREVIOUS BER   PF5: NEXT BER	

Figure 2-7. Customer BER Detail Panel (Sequence Example)

## BER Display Panels

### BER Summary Display

BER SUMMARY						
SEL#	NAME	TYPE	PENDING BERS	DATE 1ST BER MM/DD HH:MM	TOTAL IN FILE	
1	CA (CHANNEL ADAPTERS)	10	0		0	
2	TSS (TRANSMISSION SUBSYSTEM)	11	5	04/23 20:38	5	
3	CP (CONTROL PROGRAM)	12	0		0	
4	CCU (CENTRAL CONTROL UNIT)	13	0		0	
5	IOC (I/O CONTROL)	14	0		0	
6	MOSS (MAINTENANCE OPERATOR SUBSYSTEM)	01	1	04/21 07:00	2	
7	ALARMS		1	04/23 20:40	2	
8	TRSS (TOKEN-RING SUBSYSTEM)	15	0	04/21 07:00	0	
9	ALL (ALL FILE CONTENTS)		7	04/21 07:00	9	
ENTER SEL# OR NAME ==>						

Figure 2-8. BER Summary Panel (Description)

### Field Description for BER Summary Panel

- SEL#:** A number in the left-hand column, which may be typed at the cursor position, to select the appropriate BER list panel.
- NAME:** An acronym in the next column, which may be typed at the cursor position, in place of SEL# to select the appropriate BER list.
- TYPE:** The number that categorizes the BER by its origin.
- PENDING BERS:** BERs that contain a flag with value 00 (that is, not yet updated).
- DATE 1ST BER:** The time and date of the oldest BER in this category that is not updated (pending BER).
- TOTAL IN FILE:** The total number of BERs of this category in the BER file.

You use the data in this panel to help you in selecting the BER list.

**Note:** If you already know the precise origin of the fault (such as CS3, or LINE7), you can type this at the cursor position instead of SEL# or NAME. For example, typing CS3 displays only those BERs associated with CS3.

## BER List Display

As an example, the display below shows a BER *ALL LIST* panel.

				ALL	LIST	TOTAL: 9
SEL#	DATE/TIME	FLAG	NAME	TYPE	ID	ERROR DESCRIPTION
9	04/23 20:40		ALARMS			A11 SCANNER 01 DOWN(LINE 0-31)IPL SCAN
8	04/23 20:40		CS1 LINE31	11	98	PIO OUT ERROR
7	04/23 20:39		CS1 LINE31	11	98	PIO OUT ERROR
6	04/23 20:38		CS1 LINE31	11	98	PIO OUT ERROR
5	04/23 20:38		CS1 LINE31	11	98	PIO OUT ERROR
4	04/23 20:38		CS1 LINE31	11	B1	SCANNER COMMAND TIME OUT
3	04/22 08:00	FF	ALARMS		A4	MEDIA ERROR
2	04/22 08:00	FF	MOSS DISK	01	03	CRC ON READ DATA FILE.CHGPROC
1	04/21 07:00		MOSS APPL	01	06	BER FILE DELETED
*** END OF FILE ***						
- ENTER SEL# OR NAME ==>						
PF4:BER SUMMARY PF7:BACKWARD PF8:FORWARD						

Figure 2-9. BER List Panel (Description)

### Field Description for BER List Panel

XXX LIST:	The criterion XXX of selection from the BER summary, or from the previous BER list (ALL in this example).
TOTAL:	The number of BERs corresponding to the selection from the BER summary.
SEL#:	<p>The sequence number of the BER in the BER file. BERs are numbered in ascending order from the oldest to the most recent. (compare with DATE 1ST BER in BER summary).</p> <p>Enter this SEL# when you want the corresponding <b>BER detail</b> panel. The detail panel gives additional service information concerning a BER.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The BER file is not frozen while you work. New BERs may be logged while you troubleshoot, but they do not appear on the panel. These new BERs (with a new BER number) will appear next time a BER LIST display is requested.</p>
DATE:	Four digits defining month and day. EP does not handle the date (in EP, DATE = 00/00).
TIME:	<p>Four digits defining hour and minute.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Under NCP, the time and date information comes from the host. If the host is remote, the time recorded on the BER may differ from the 3720 time.</p>
FLAG:	Two hex digits (00-FF) being the status of the BER. The FLAG field is not updatable on the LIST panel. For better readability, a 00 flag does not appear on this panel, and is therefore left blank.
NAME:	More precise information about the origin of a BER (for example, CS, line, or channel number). The NAME may be typed at the cursor position to obtain the appropriate BER list. The NAME is repeated in the error description line of the <b>BER detail</b> panel.
TYPE:	The number that categorizes the BER.



ID: Two hex digits that give more precision to the origin of the BER.  
ERROR DESCRIPTION: Up to 40 characters that describe the error.

## PF Keys on BER List Panel

PF4: Return to the **BER summary** panel.  
PF7: This key enables you to scroll backwards, 10 BERs at a time, for the same component.  
PF8: This key enables you to scroll forwards, 10 BERs at a time for the same component.

## BER Detail Display

To display an individual **BER detail** panel, type the corresponding SEL# (BER sequence number in BER file) on the **BER list** panel, at the cursor position. The layout is the following:

BER DETAIL

SEL:ddd FLAG:hh DATE:dd/dd TIME:dd:dd TYPE:hh ID:hh LOST:ddd CP-ABEND:hhhh  
< error description line >  
X:bbbbbbbb  
XX:hh XX:hh XX:hhhh XXXX:hhhh XXX:hh  
XXX:hhhh hhhh hhhh hhhh hhhh hhhh hhhh hhhh hhhh hhhh hhhh hhhh hhhh  
  
OVERRIDE FLAG VALUE WITH NEW HEXADECIMAL VALUE  
PF4: BER SUMMARY PF5: BER LIST PF7: PREVIOUS PF8: NEXT

Figure 2-10. BER Detail Panel (Description)

This panel contains the coded service information appropriate to the type of BER selected.

**Note:** When used in customer mode, the panel layout is different (an example with real data for *service* and *customer* display panels is given on Figures 2-10 and 2-7).

If you scroll through **BER detail** panels and see one that shows anomalies, such as a blank panel or unformatted hexadecimal characters, this means that the BER file is full and cannot number the BERs correctly. To correct this problem, press PF5. This gives a new, correct BER list.

## Common Fields in Header Lines

In each detail panel, the top two lines and the bottom line always have the same format. The field descriptions are:

SEL#: Three digits (from 1 to 999) defining the BER# (BER sequence number in BER file). This is either the BER corresponding to the SEL# (from the **BER list** panel), or the next or previous BER of the same selection criteria (obtained when pressing PF7 or PF8). You may alter these three digits by placing the cursor under the digits, then pressing **SEND**. This displays the **BER detail** panel corresponding to that new BER#.

FLAG: Two hexadecimal digits defining the BER status.  
This field may be updated on the **BER detail** panel.

DATE: Four digits defining month and day (contains 00/00 in EP). Same as in the **BER list** panel.

TIME: Four digits defining hour and minute. Same as in the **BER list** panel.

TYPE: Two-digit hexadecimal number that categorizes the BER.

ID: Two-digit hexadecimal number that specifies the origin of the BER (BER identifier).

For a BER created by NCP/EP, the first byte of the BER ID contains the interrupt level at which the error was detected and recorded:

- 1, 2, 3, and 4: most probable cause is the control program, and the program level that recorded the event/error was 1, 2, 3, or 4 respectively.
- 9, A, B, and C: most probable cause is the hardware or the microcode, and the program level that recorded the event/error was 1, 2, 3, or 4 respectively.

LOST: Three digits defining the number of BERs that have been lost after creation of this BER, the field is displayed only when BERs have been lost. This field applies only to CP BERs.

CP-ABEND: Four hexadecimal digits defining the abend code (this field does not apply to MOSS BERs). The field is displayed only when there is an abend code.

ERROR DESCRIPTION: One line giving a description of the error (same as on the **BER list** panel, but the maximum length is 80).

#### PF Key on BER Detail Panel

PF4: Display BER summary.

PF5: Display the **BER list** panel. Pressing this key displays the **BER list** panel from which the **BER detail** panel was selected. The new **BER list** panel starts with the BER requested in the **BER detail** panel.

PF7: Scroll back to previous BER (this is the previous BER in the list from which the BER detail was selected).

PF8: Scroll forward to next BER (this is the next BER in the list from which the BER detail was selected).

**Note:** Using PF7 or PF8, you may request a BER that is outside the selected list.

---

## BER File Erasure

The entire BER file can be erased using the 3720 function *DD* (DUMP/DISPLAY DEL), see "Deleting a File from MOSS Disk" on page 5-12.

**The BER file should be erased only in exceptional cases, since:**

1. It is not possible to erase individual BERs in the file, but only the entire BER file.
2. The service personnel might need old BERs for history purposes.
3. The BER file, when full, writes the most recent BERs on the disk space used by the *oldest* BERs (wraparound file). When the BER file is erased, a BER to this effect is logged in the file.

---

## Updating the Service Information Field in Alarm BERs

To update the *information* field in the Alarm BER, use the following procedure:

1. Display the **BER detail** panel corresponding to the alarm for which you want to record comments (see Figure 2-11).
2. Place the cursor at the beginning of the first empty line (under the text of the alarm).
3. Type up to 40 characters of information.
4. Press *SEND*.

You may then quit, your comments have been recorded, and could be used later.

BER DETAIL

SEL:ddd FLAG:hh DATE:dd/dd TIME:dd:dd TYPE:hh ID:hh LOST:ddd CP-ABEND:hhhh  
HARDWARE ERROR: CHANNEL ADAPTER 1 DOWN hhhhmmss refcoocde  
< comment line >

OVERWRITE FLAG VALUE WITH NEW HEXADECIMAL VALUE  
PF4: BER SUMMARY PF5: BER LIST PF7: PREVIOUS PF8: NEXT

Figure 2-11. Alarm BER Detail Panel (Sample)

## Manual BER Correlation and Reference Code Interpretation

This function allows the service personnel to display:

- For a range of BERs, all suspected FRUs that have been associated to the BERs and the number of time they were suspected.
- For a reference code, its associated FRU list.

This function is allowed in maintenance mode only.

### BER Correlation Procedure.

1. Type **BC** on the **3720 function menu** panel.

The **BER correlation selection** panel will be displayed with a request for the range of BERs for which you want a correlation (see Figure 2-12).

2. Type the **LATEST BER NUMBER** (the default is last BER logged) and the **OLDEST BER NUMBER** (the default is wrap around to the one-before-last BER logged)
3. Press **SEND**

The **BER correlation result** panel displays an ordered list of all FRUs that were involved by the BERs defined in the BER range (see Figure 2-13). The list gives also the number of times each FRU has been selected.

MANUAL CORRELATION

ENTER LATEST BER NUMBER ==> (DEFAULT VALUE IS LAST LOGGED)

ENTER OLDEST BER NUMBER ==> (DEFAULT VALUE IS WRAP AROUND)

PF5=REFERENCE CODE INTERPRETATION

Figure 2-12. BER Correlation Selection Panel

MANUAL CORRELATION

ENTER LATEST BER NUMBER ==> 23 (DEFAULT VALUE IS LAST LOGGED)

ENTER OLDEST BER NUMBER ==> 01 (DEFAULT VALUE IS WRAP AROUND)

BER CORRELATION RESULTS

FRU(S) ORDERED LIST

CSP2 01D-A1S2 ( 2)	CSP1 01D-A1T2 ( 2)	RDV 01D-A1B2 ( 2)
MAC 02D-A1B2 ( 1)	PUC 02D-A1C2 ( 1)	CSPS 01D-A1V2 ( 1)
FES 01D-A1Q2 ( 1)		

PF4=BER SUMMARY PF5=REFERENCE CODE INTERPRETATION

Figure 2-13. BER Correlation Result Panel

PF5: Requests the *Reference Code Interpretation* function (see "Reference Code Interpretation into FRUs" on page 2-13).

## Reference Code Interpretation into FRUs

This function allows you to display, for a reference code, the list of the suspected FRUs

### Procedure

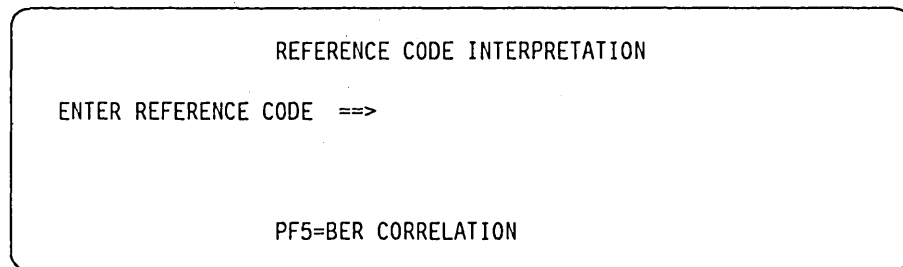
From the **BER correlation result** panel (Figure 2-13 on page 2-12), you pressed **PF5**:

The **Reference code interpretation selection** panel is displayed (see Figure 2-14).

On this panel:

1. Type the full *reference code* (or its four last digits) to get a list of suspected Field-Replaceable Units (FRUs) for that code.
2. Press **SEND**

The **Reference code interpretation FRU list** panel is displayed (see Figure 2-15).

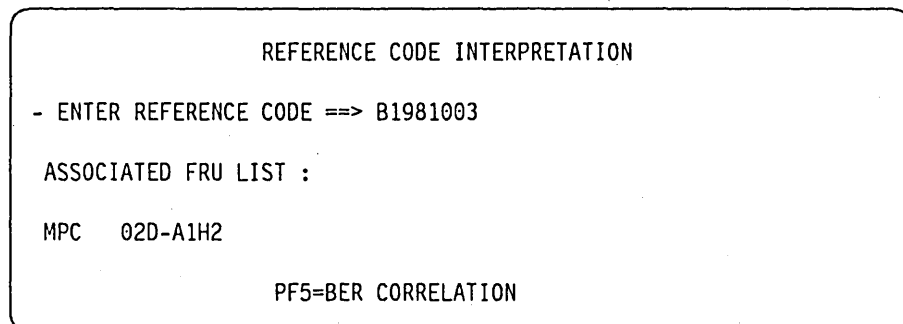


```
REFERENCE CODE INTERPRETATION

ENTER REFERENCE CODE ==>

PF5=BER CORRELATION
```

Figure 2-14. Reference Code Interpretation Selection Panel



```
REFERENCE CODE INTERPRETATION

- ENTER REFERENCE CODE ==> B1981003

ASSOCIATED FRU LIST :

MPC 02D-A1H2

PF5=BER CORRELATION
```

Figure 2-15. Reference Code Interpretation FRU List Panel

**PF5:** Requests the *BER Correlation* function (see “BER Correlation Procedure.” on page 2-12).



## Chapter 3. Running Diagnostics from Console

### What Are 3720 Diagnostics

**Warning:** When you are running the diagnostic programs, the customer cannot use the 3720.

Diagnostics consist of:

- IML checkout programs.
- Offline diagnostics stored on the disk.
- Channel adapter OLTs stored in the host, and the OLT responder stored on the disk (see "How to Run Channel Adapter Online Tests (OLTs)" on page 3-32).
- ST370, NST-2, and ST4300 (system tests).

**Note:** For details of IML checkout programs and system test programs, see the *Maintenance Information Reference* manual (MIR), SY3312040, or the corresponding *User's Guide*.

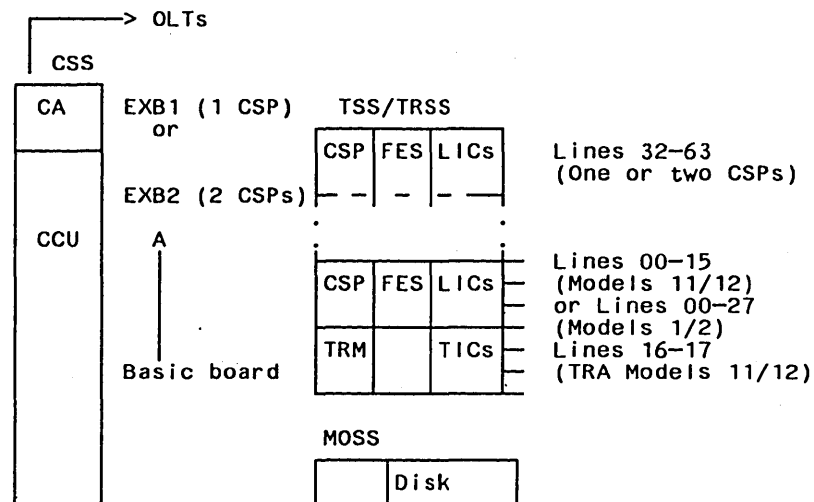


Figure 3-1. Diagnostic Locations

The diagnostic programs are run to detect solid failures caused by the hardware in the 3720, and to isolate the field-replaceable unit(s) that caused the failure. They are also run after a repair is performed to check that the controller is working correctly. Diagnostics must be run before and after an EC or an MES is installed.

Only the channel adapters, scanners, TRA, and telecommunication lines defined in the 3720 configuration data file are tested.

Run the CDF 'verify' option when you suspect a discrepancy between the machine configuration and the CDF.

## Error During Diagnostics

When a diagnostic program detects a failure, a repair action code (RAC), an address, an error return code (ERC), and error messages are displayed on the console screen.

"RAC (Repair Action Code)" on page 3-22 explains how to use this information.

**Note:** When diagnostics are requested from the control panel, the results are shown on the hexadecimal display with a RAC and a secondary code displayed alternately.

### THIS CHAPTER EXPLAINS ONLY HOW TO RUN OFFLINE DIAGNOSTICS AND OLTs FROM THE OPERATOR CONSOLE

All diagnostic routines are explained in the *3720 Diagnostic Descriptions* manual, SY33-2042.

## Offline Diagnostics Monitoring

To run offline diagnostics, **MOSS must be initialized with its microcode (IML).**

The offline diagnostics are monitored by the diagnostic control monitor (DCM) and the command processor (CP).

The diagnostic control monitor is loaded when you select the diagnostic utility programs from the **3720 function menu** panel. It automatically restricts the diagnostic testing to elements defined in the configuration data file (CDF).

Communication with the DCM is through the operator console. The DCM allows diagnostic program selection and choice of options within the selection. It sends your commands to the command processor and displays diagnostic results, such as a repair action code (RAC), on the console.

The command processor is loaded in the 3720 subsystem (CCU, MOSS, or TSS) where the selected diagnostic is to be run. It reports diagnostic events and diagnostic results.

## Diagnostic Structure

The offline diagnostics are arranged in groups, internal functional tests (IFTs), sections, and routines.

**Group:** Set of IFTs that tests a 3720 subsystem (the TSS group for example).

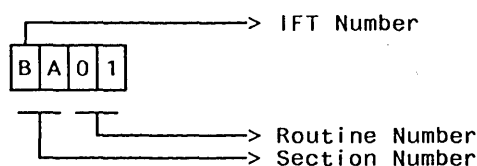
**IFT:** Internal functional test that is often divided into *sections* that can be loaded and executed one at a time.

**Section:** Set of routines that tests a particular adapter, or a component of a subsystem.

**Routine:** The shortest executable test.

## Diagnostic Identification

The identification contains the IFT number, the section number, and the routine number as follows:





For specific IFT, section, or routine selection, see "Selecting from Diagnostic Request Menu" on page 3-9.

## List and Duration of Diagnostics

The timing estimates for the diagnostics groups and their IFTs are the following:

CCU IFTs: >5 min	(A: 1.5, B: .2, C: 1, D: 2, E: 1)
IOCB IFTs: (3-5 min)	(I: 2-3, J: 2)
CA IFT: (2 min)	(L: 2)
TSS IFTs: (2-6 min)	(P: 1-5, Q: .2-.5, R: .5-1.0)
TRSS IFTs: (1-2 min)	(T: 1-2)

**Total run 'all' = 13 (minimum) to 18 (maximum) minutes.**

### Notes:

1. The MOSS is diagnosed while running MOSS IML (For details of MOSS IML, see the *Maintenance Information Reference* manual, and Chapter 6 of the *3720 Diagnostic Description* manual).
2. For details of CCU, IOCB, CA, TSS and TRSS diagnostics, see the corresponding chapter of the *3720 Diagnostic Descriptions* manual.

## Manual Routines

### Manual routines are:

- **Manually invoked** routines, that is, routines that will not run during diagnostics unless they are specifically requested.

These routines are:

- **CA05** (solid 1-bit error detection) which is used to analyze the CCU storage. A specific pico-diagnostic routine is running for this test (fourth pico-diagnostic module). Its purpose is to show which storage card has a number of solid single-bit errors higher than a given threshold.

The 'ADDIT INFO' field indicates which storage card is faulty (SBC or SEC).

**Note:** You must run **ALL (1)** or **CCU (2)** diagnostics before requesting routine **CA05**.

- **EB03** which is used to test the network power off capability (see page 3-6).
- **IB01**, which is a scoping routine for the IOC bus.

Details of how and when to use this routine can be found in Chapter 8 of the *3720 Maintenance Information Reference (MIR)* manual.

- **Manual intervention** routines, that is, routines that in some circumstances, require a manual intervention, such as removing a card or installing a wrap plug on 3720 components.

These manual intervention routines are:

- **QCxx**, TSS wrap test routines for Worldwide (see 3-4).
- **QDxx**, TSS wrap test routines for Japan only (see 3-4). They are specific to the Nippon Telegraph Telephone (NTT) administration.

## Worldwide Wrap Test during Diagnostics (at Tailgate)

A default pattern is available with all LIC types for the tailgate level wrap. If you want to create your own pattern, refer to the *3720 Extended Services* manual.

Routines QC01 through QC07, when selected, require you to plug a wrap block or a wrap cable instead of the terminal or modem connector on the 3720 or 3721 LIC port (tailgates). They run automatically when the TSS group or the IFT Q is selected, provided that the wrap block (LIC type 1, 2, or 4) or the wrap cable (LIC type 3) is plugged on the selected line and the CDF is properly updated. If it is not:

1. Remove cable from the LIC port of the selected line.
2. Place the wrap block or wrap cable on the selected line.
3. Update the cable identification "I" to:
  - '1' for wrap block (LIC1, 2, or 4)
  - '2' for wrap cable (LIC3)

Update also the clock information "C" if no clock is defined (clock value must be non-zero), using the CDF display/update scanner function (see "Service CDF Display/Update" on page 8-7).

4. Run the QC section (or all TSS IFTs) on the selected scanner and line (QCxx routines are automatically called if the CDF specifies that there is a wrap block or wrap cable for that line).
5. Take off the wrap plug or wrap cable.
6. Reconnect the LIC cable for the line.
7. Update the CDF accordingly.

**Note:** In order to fully test the LIC3 card, it is necessary to reverse the LIC3 wrap cable after a first test pass, then run the test again. One of the tests must be valid.

If no error is found, you may now test the cable that goes from the LIC to the modem (see next section).

## Testing the Cable

1. Build a wrap block for the cable 'blue box' (V.24 interface only). (See Chapter 2 of the *Maintenance Information Reference* manual for details.)
2. Run QC only for the selected line.

## Wrap Test during Diagnostics for Japan Only

Routines QD01 through QD05 are reserved for the Nippon Telegraph Telephone (NTT) administration. They check the data wrap regardless of the LIC type. They also check the modem control leads depending on the LIC type (modem-in wrap).

They must be selected; they do not run automatically like the QCxx routines.

**QD01: NTT On/Off Driver Test:** This routine sets permanently on or off all the used line drivers of a LIC card to allow measurements by the NTT service personnel.

The routine must be specifically selected together with the selected scanner and line, as shown in the following example:

```
DIAG==> QD01 ADP#==> 3 LINE==> 2 OPT==> N
```

When the message: LINE DRIVER STATE: ON=F1, OFF=F2, EXIT=F9

is displayed, enter:

- RF1 to set drivers at high voltage level
- RF2 to set drivers at low voltage level
- RF9 to exit from the routine

If you enter RF1 or RF2, the following message is displayed:

CHECK IF DRIVERS ARE AS REQUESTED. PRESS SEND TO CONTINUE

At this step, the NTT personnel may check the driver voltage. To change the option, press SEND.

**QD02: NTT Data Wrap Test:** This routine checks the data wrap path (transmit to receive) regardless of the LIC type. The Test/Operate switch on the cable connector or on the DCE must be set as follows:

- LIC type 1: Set the connector Test/Operate switch to TEST.
- LIC type 3: Set the DCE Test/Operate switch to T1.
- LIC type 4x: Set the DCE Test/Operate switch to T1.

**QD03, QD04, QD05: NTT Modem-In Wrap Test:** These routines check the modem control leads according to the LIC type. Use the TEST/OPERATE switch or the wrap block as follows:

- LIC type 1 (V24): Set the connector TEST/OPERATE switch to TEST.
- LIC type 1 (V25): Plug the wrap block at the cable end.
- LIC type 3: Set the DCE Test/Operate switch to T1.
- LIC type 4x: Set the DCE Test/Operate switch to T1.

## Line Testing Possibilities

A line position can be plugged with a line cable, or be without a line cable, or can be plugged with a wrap block (LIC type 1, 2, 4A, or 4B), or with a wrap cable (LIC type 3). The CDF for each line must be updated accordingly.

When the TSS IFTs are run, the hardware for a selected line is:

1. Tested up to the LIC drivers if the line cable is present.
2. Tested up to the LIC and ICC (if present) card level for a line without cable.
3. Fully tested if a wrap block or a wrap cable is present on the selected line. Plugging a wrap block or wrap cable automatically selects the manual intervention section QC.

**Note:** The CDF must be updated accordingly.

4. In order to fully test the LIC3 card, it is necessary to reverse the LIC3 wrap cable after a first test pass, then run the test again. One of the tests must be valid.

For wraps during normal operation, see the *3720 Extended Services* manual.

## Remote Power-Off Test procedure.

This procedure is slightly different for a remote or a local 3720.

### STEP 1: Run CCU diagnostic routine EB03.

When prompted by:

CHECK POWER CONTROL SWITCH IS ON LOCAL, THEN PRESS SEND (for local 3720)

or

CHECK REMOTE POWER OFF SWITCH IS ON DISABLE, THEN PRESS SEND (for remote 3720)

set the switch as requested, then press **SEND**.

If this does not cause the 3720 to be powered OFF, go to step 2.

If this causes the 3720 to be powered OFF, it is wrong:

1. First check the power control rotary switch (see power MAPs of the *Maintenance Information Procedure* manual).
2. Then, if the power control rotary switch was not the faulty element, exchange the PUC card (and the MAC card), then run EB03 once more.
3. If the results are still bad, exchange the PWC card.
4. If the results are still bad, see Chapter 10 of the *MIR*.

### Step 2:

When prompted by:

TURN POWER CONTROL SWITCH TO NETWORK, THEN PRESS SEND (for local 3720)

or

TURN REMOTE POWER OFF SWITCH ON ENABLE, THEN PRESS SEND (for remote 3720)

set the switch as requested, then press **SEND**.

If this causes the 3720 to be powered OFF, it is OK, the RPO function works properly.

If this does not cause the 3720 to be powered OFF:

RAC '8DD' is displayed (FRU group with PUC and MAC cards)

1. Exchange the cards and run EB03 once more.  
If all FRUs have been exchanged and the results are still bad,
2. Check the power control rotary switch (see power MAPs of the *MIP*).
3. If the results are still bad, exchange the PWC card.
4. If the results are still bad, see Chapter 10 of the *MIR*.

**Note:** RAC '87A' corresponds to FRU group 1069 which includes:

- PUC 02D A1C2
- MAC 02D A1B2
- CRDV 02D A1A2.

## How to Run Offline Diagnostics from the Operator Console

The diagnostic control facility (DCF) can be selected from the control panel or from the operator console.

The *Maintenance Information Procedures* (MIP) manual explains how to run diagnostics from the 3720 control panel, that is:

1. Use the various switches to start the DCF.
2. Interpret the results from the hexadecimal display of the 3720 control panel.

**Warning:** The 3720 may be operational; ask the customer to de-activate the 3720 and all connected resources before starting the diagnostics.

Before entering the following procedure, set all the Channel adapters to 'disabled' and wait for the 'all channel adapter disabled' light (green light) to be on. Set the Panel-console switch to Panel.

### Selecting the Offline Diagnostics

You must first display the **3720 function menu** in *maintenance* mode (see Figure 3-2).

"Local Connection to MOSS by Service Personnel" on page 1-12 explains how to obtain this display.

1. Type *DG* (for diagnostic programs) in the *S/A* (press PF1 if cursor is not in *S/A*).
2. Press *SEND*.

The **diagnostic request** panel will be displayed (see Figure 3-3 on page 3-8).

**Note:** If one (or more) of the channel adapter interfaces is enabled, the function message area displays:

CAUTION: CA INTERFACE(S) ENABLED: B2 A2 B1 A1

MOSS-ALONE	CCU INTERRUPTS DISABLED
CUSTOMER ID: .....	3720-11
SERIAL NUMBER: xxxxxxx	
----- MAINTENANCE MODE -----	
SYSTEM INPUT AREA (SIA) ==>	
T:TERMINATE OFF: LOGOFF PF1: MOVE TO SIA PF2: CCU FNCTN PF3: ALARM	
BER CORRELATION...: BC	MODULE DISPLAY...: MD
DUMP DISPLAY/DEL...: DD	MOSS STORE DPLY...: MS
DIAGNOSTICS.....: DG	TRSS FUNCTIONS...: TRS
	TSS FUNCTIONS....: TS

Figure 3-2. 3720 Function Menu Panel (Maintenance Fields)

PROCESS STOP-CCU-CHK SERVICE-MODE  
BYP-ADP-CHK

CUSTOMER ID: ..... 3720-11 SERIAL NUMBER: xxxxxxxx

----- MAINTENANCE MODE -----

FUNCTION ON SCREEN: DIAGNOSTICS

SYSTEM INPUT AREA (SIA) ==>

T:TERMINATE OFF: LOGOFF PF1: MOVE TO SIA PF2: CCU FNCTN PF3: ALARM

DIAG	ADP#	LINE
------	------	------

1 ALL		
2 CCU		
3 IOCB		
4 CA	01-02	
5 TSS	01-01	00-31
6 OLT	01-02	
7 TRSS	02-02	01-02

AND

DIAG - RUN INIT

OPT = Y IF MODIFY

OPTION REQUIRED

< Function Message Area >

ENTER REQUEST ACCORDING TO THE DIAG MENU

DIAG==> ADP#==> LINE==> OPT==> N

==>

Figure 3-3. Diagnostic Request Panel

## Selecting from Diagnostic Request Menu

- Select from the **diagnostic request** panel the parameters you wish to enter on the selection line (DIAG, ADP#, LINE, OPT).

To select diagnostics, use the DIAG field, and type:

- 1 through 7 to select all diagnostics (1), or a whole diagnostic group (see "Explanation for Diagnostic Request Panel Menu").
- X, where X is the letter corresponding to a specific IFT (for example *P* for the FES IFT *P*).
- XY, where X is the IFT, and Y the specific section (for example *PA* for section A of FES IFT *P*).
- XYZZ, where X is the IFT, Y the specific section, and ZZ is the routine number (for example *PA10* for routine 10 of section A of FES IFT *P*).

Move the cursor from its initial position (DIAG = = >) to the next after each parameter is entered. To skip a parameter entry, press the -->| key.

- Press *SEND* to execute the request.
- Read what is displayed in the work area, and proceed with the next action according to the displayed menu or message. The fields in the work area are explained in "Work Area Description (Common Fields)" on page 3-20.

## Entering Additional Parameters

A diagnostic may require you to enter parameters. The request is displayed on the message line. For example:

```
ENTER LEVEL YOU WANT: 01, 02, 03, 04, 05
```

This requires a full reply: You **must not** reply with a null entry or 'R' only, but with 'R' and the parameters.

In this example, if you want to run the routine on CCU interrupt level 2, you must reply R02.

## Selection Example

```
DIAG==> 5 ADP#==> 1 LINE==> 14 OPT==> Y
```

In this example, the TSS diagnostic group is selected (5), and tests line 14 of scanner 1. The modify option is requested.

## Explanation for Diagnostic Request Panel Menu

- |         |  |
|---------|--|
| 1 ALL:  | The object of this selection is to run the diagnostics without manual intervention.<br><br>It causes the offline diagnostics to run in the mandatory sequence. The console panel shows the progress of the diagnostic by updating the DIAG STATUS AREA every time a new routine is entered. Channel adapters, scanners, TRAs, and telecommunication lines are all tested in turn if present in the 3720 CDF.<br><br>The OLTs and the manual routines are not run when ALL is selected. This selection provides a quick check that the communication controller is working. |
| 2 CCU:  | To run the CCU diagnostics.  |
| 3 IOCB: | To run the redrive and the IOCB diagnostics.   |

4 CA |01-02|: In this example '01' and '02' are the channel adapters present on the machine. You may select a channel adapter in the range given. If you do not select a channel adapter, all are tested in turn, up to the last one defined in the 3720 CDF.

5 TSS |01-01|00-31|: In this example '01' is the scanner present on the machine (00-31 are the possible lines of a scanner)

When DIAG 5 is entered with no further parameters, all the lines on every scanner are tested if defined in the 3720 CDF. You may test all the lines attached to a scanner, or one line only on a particular scanner. For detailed information and line testing possibilities, see the *Maintenance Information Reference* manual.

6 OLT |01-02|: '01-02' represents the channel adapters (see CA|01-02|). This selection loads the channel adapter responder program into CCU storage, and responds to the requests of the host OLTs. You must select a channel adapter defined in the 3720 CDF.

7 TRSS |02-02|01-02|: '02-02' represents the TRA number; '01-02' represents the possible TICs installed.

When DIAG 7 is entered with no further parameters, all the TICs of the TRA (only one TRA on 3720 Model 11/12) are tested. You may test all the TICs (up to 2), or one TIC only. For detailed information and line testing possibilities, see the *Maintenance Information Reference* manual.

### Selection Line Explanation for Diagnostic Request Panel

DIAG ==>: The diagnostic group (1 - 7), IFT, section, or routine that you want to run.

- Enter 1 through 7 to select all diagnostics or a whole diagnostic group (see "Explanation for Diagnostic Request Panel Menu" on page 3-9).
- To run a specific IFT, enter the corresponding letter (for example P for the FES IFT P).
- To run a specific Section of an IFT, enter the corresponding value (for example PA for section A of FES IFT P).
- To run a specific routine of a Section of an IFT, enter the corresponding value (for example PA10 for routine 10 of section A of FES IFT P)

ADP#==>: The adapter number (see page 3-9):

- Channel number (1 to 2) for CA and OLT
- TSS number (1, 3, or 4)
- TRA number (2 for 3720 model 11/12)

LINE==>: The number of a specific line (0-31) attached to a particular scanner (Models 1 and 2), or the TIC (1 or 2) attached to the TRM (Models 11 and 12).

OPT==>: Default options are:

- S: STOP ON FIRST ERROR

The diagnostic request is executed. On detection of the first error, testing stops and the error information is displayed.

- NW: NO WAIT BEFORE EXECUTION OF EACH ROUTINE

Allows the request to execute without a stop before routine execution.

- C1: CYCLE = 1

The request is executed **once**, and ends with the REQUEST COMPLETE message.



- R1: REPEAT EACH ROUTINE ONCE

Each routine is executed once.

Enter 'Y' after OPT==> to display the **diagnostic selection modify** panel from which you may modify the options. The default value is N (no modification).

"Diagnostic Options" on page 3-17 lists all possible options, and how they can be modified.

"List and Duration of Diagnostics" on page 3-3 gives the list of all IFTs together with their duration estimates.

## Manual Intervention

A diagnostic may also require you to follow a manual intervention associated with troubleshooting (the associated procedure is provided in the *3720 Maintenance Information Reference* manual).

Example:

RECONNECT RDV3 THEN PRESS SEND

The jumper placed on Redrive card number 3 must first be removed, then the SEND key must be pressed.

## Diagnostic Running Procedure

The panels available when running diagnostics are as follows:

- Diagnostic request
- Diagnostic selection modify
- Diagnostic execution modify
- Diagnostic message

To stop a diagnostic program that is running, press the **BREAK** (ATTN) key.

Wait for the DCF to receive the break caused by this key, and to stop the diagnostic (up to 3 minutes).

## Use of CCU Functions with Diagnostics

When running CCU diagnostics (IFTs A, B, C, D, and E), you cannot always use the CCU functions. If you try to use them when they are not allowed, the diagnostic menu displays: CCU FNCTN BARRED.

If you request RUN ALL, you may use the CCU functions **only after** IFTs A, B, C, D, and E have been run.

When running TSS diagnostics (IFT P, Q, and R) the CCU is not used as a processor.

Only the last 2K of CCU storage are used as 'scanner mailbox' for data exchange between the DCM in the MOSS and the CP-and-IFTs in the TSS. There is no need to use the CCU functions when running TSS diagnostics, except if you wish to display the 'scanner mailbox'. Setting an address compare, for example, has no meaning.

All CCU functions should be used only when running IFTs I, J, or L.

Instruction stepping is not supported by the DCF.

## Restrictions of CCU Function Use with Diagnostics

The following CCU functions may lead to unpredictable results:

- CH (channel adapter state)
- RCL (reset CCU/LSSD)
- IL3 (CCU level 3 interrupt)
- RIO (reset IOC)

To use address compare and branch trace, the CCU must first be initialized. The setting of these two functions remains active as long as the CCU is not reinitialized (indicated by 'RESET' on the MSA).

**Note:** For branch trace, local storage X'7D' **must** contain X'10000' (address of the branch trace buffer), and local storage X'7C' **must** contain X'6000' (length of branch trace buffer). Check the local storages for these values, and set them to the correct values when required.

## Selection of a CCU Function During Diagnostics

Proceed as follows:

- Enter your selection on the **diagnostic request** panel. (Enter G for go if you have modified one of the options.)
- Press the *BREAK* (ATTN) key to initiate a break.

**Note:** If the request is 'RUN ALL', do not press the *BREAK* key before routine IA01 appears on the panel.

- After a short wait, you receive the 'BREAK RECEIVED' message.

The CCU is now initialized.

1. Press *PF2* to display the **CCU function menu** panel.
2. Press *PF1* to place the cursor in the SIA.
3. Type the acronym corresponding to the specific CCU function.
4. Press *SEND*.

- The CCU function selected will run.
- Return to the DCF application by pressing *PF2* again, then enter G (for go).
- You will regain control after an address compare has occurred. The panel in Figure 3-4 is displayed:

### DCF Display on CCU Stop Address Compare

You may now use the CCU functions (use *PF2* to return to the DCF application).

PROCESS	STOP-CCU-CHK	SERVICE-MODE	AC	HIT	LAR:.....	OP:....	C:.
STOP-AC	BYP-ADP-CHK				IAR:.....	ILVL:..	Z:.
CUSTOMER ID: .....		3720-1		SERIAL NUMBER: xxxxxxxx			
----- MAINTENANCE MODE -----							
FUNCTION ON SCREEN: DIAGNOSTICS							
SYSTEM INPUT AREA (SIA) ==>							
T:TERMINATE OFF: LOGOFF PF1: MOVE TO SIA PF2: CCU FNCTN PF3: ALARM							
A ABORT ROUTINE							
C CANCEL REQUEST							
RX..X REPLY:							
ENTER R							
FOLLOWED BY X..X							
(IFT MESSAGE),							
THEN PRESS SEND.							
(REPLY MAY BE A							
NULL STRING)							
REQUEST: ....					DIAG RUNNING		
OPTIONS: S NW C1 R1					ROUTINE ....		
REQUESTED CCU STOP OCCURRED.							
ENTER REQUEST ACCORDING TO THE DIAG MENU							
==>							
==>							

Figure 3-4. Diagnostic Execution Panel (Stop Address Compare)

## Resuming DCF Processing

To resume DCF processing requires two steps:

1. START CCU
2. Restart the DCF.

**Note:** The second step (restart the DCF) is possible only when the CCU enters the run mode (see second line of MSA). One or several subsequent START CCU may be needed to move the CCU status to run mode, depending on the AC stop occurrences.

Any attempts to restart the DCF when the CCU is in STOP-AC mode may lead to unpredictable results.

## Starting the CCU

1. Press PF1 to place the cursor in the SIA field.
2. Type S (for the START CCU function).
3. Press *SEND*.

## Restarting the DCF

1. Place the cursor under the ENTER REQUEST line
2. Type:
  - a. R, for continue
  - b. A, for abort
  - c. C, for cancel
3. Press *SEND*.

## Diagnostic Selection Modify Menu

This is the panel presented after you selected a diagnostic on the **diagnostic request** panel, with the OPT==> field updated to the Y value, and before the selected diagnostic has been started.

In the example below, the option will be modified from S (stop on first error) to DM (display multiple errors).

Type **G** and press **SEND** to start the execution of the diagnostics with the new options.

<pre>G GO C CANCEL REQUEST  M MODIFY OPTIONS: S/LS/AL/ALS/B/DM NW/W C1/CNNN/C R1/RNNN</pre>	<pre>REQUEST: PB OPTIONS: S  NW C1  R1  DIAG - RUN INIT  ENTER REQUEST ACCORDING TO THE DIAG MENU ==&gt; M DM W</pre>
---	---

Figure 3-5. Diagnostic Selection Modify Panel

## Diagnostic Execution Modify Menu

This is the panel presented after the **BREAK** (ATTN) key has been hit during the running of the diagnostic, and when the break has been received by the control program.

In the example below, **G** (for go) has been typed under the ENTER REQUEST.

Press **SEND** to restart the execution of the diagnostics.

<pre>G GO C CANCEL REQUEST  M MODIFY OPTIONS: S/LS/AL/ALS/B/DM NW/W C1/CNNN/C R1/RNNN</pre>	<pre>REQUEST: TSS 1 OPTIONS: S  NW C1  R1  TSS  DIAG RUNNING ROUTINE PA04 ADP 01  BREAK RECEIVED ENTER REQUEST ACCORDING TO THE DIAG MENU ==&gt; G</pre>
---	--

Figure 3-6. Diagnostic Execution Modify Panel

## Commands of the Diagnostic Execution Modify Panel (A, G, C, R, or M)

The menu to the left of the panel lists the following set of commands:

- A ABORT ROUTINE: The current routine is aborted. The next routine in sequence is entered, or the request is complete if the abort occurred on the last routine.
- G GO:
  - 1. (Selection Modify Menu):  
After your request is entered on the panel, GO starts the execution.
  - 2. (Execution Modify Menu):  
After your request is entered on the panel, GO resumes the execution.
- C CANCEL: The current request is canceled, allowing a new request. The current set of options is reset.
- R RERUN: The diagnostic request is restarted from the beginning. The current set of options is not changed.
- M MODIFY OPTIONS: The modify options (M) are separated by a slash (/) on each line of the menu. This means that on a given line, the options are mutually exclusive. However, you may select several options, one per line of the menu.

If you select more than one option for the same line, only the last one is accepted.

if you do not select any option, the initial values are:

- S (stop on first error)
- NW (no wait before execution of each routine)
- C1 (cycle = 1)
- R1 (repeat each routine once)

To change options, you must enter the following:

```

M DM W _____ Space required
| | _____ Space required
M is required
```

To leave the modify option (M), enter any command (A, C, G, or R). The request is executed.

All options are listed in "Diagnostic Options" on page 3-17.

## Diagnostic Options

### Stop Option S/LS/AL/ALS/B/DM

**S STOP ON FIRST ERROR:** This is the default option.

The diagnostic request is executed. On detection of the first error, testing stops and the error information is displayed.

If you choose to continue the request by typing G (go), the request continues from the error until a second error is detected; at that time the error is displayed and the request stops again.

**LS LOOP ON FIRST ERROR WITH STOP:** The diagnostic request is executed until the first error is detected. The DCF then displays this error and stops. Entering G (go) causes the DCF to loop on the error, and to stop and display when the same error is detected again.

The loop is maintained on this error display whether the error which initiated the loop remains. If a new error appears inside the loop, it is displayed as N ERC (new ERC) and N RAC (new RAC); but even then the loop is maintained on the first error detected.

At each display stop, you may enter one of the commands of the menu (A, G, C, R, or M).

**AL AUTOMATIC LOOP ON ERROR:** The diagnostic request is executed until the first error is detected. The DCF displays this error and starts looping automatically on the error. The loop is maintained on this error whether the error which initiated the loop remains. If a new error appears inside the loop, it is displayed as N ERC (new ERC) and N RAC (new RAC), but even then, the loop is maintained on the first error detected.

As there is no stop once the loop has been initiated, you have no other way to regain control than to press the *BREAK* (ATTN) key. The message *BREAK RECEIVED* then appears.

The request is stopped and you may use one of the commands of the menu (A, G, C, R, or M).

**ALS AUTOMATIC LOOP ON ERROR WITH NEW ERROR STOP:** The diagnostic request is executed until the first error is detected. The DCF displays this error and begins to loop automatically on the error. The loop is maintained on this error display, whether the error that initiated the loop remains. If a new error appears inside the loop, it is displayed as N ERC (new ERC) and N RAC (new RAC); the DCF stops on this display.

You may now enter any command of the 'execution modify' menu.

For example:

- G0 restarts the loop (ALS option still active)
- M S changes the ALS option to the stop on error option; entering 'G' (for go) then causes the DCF to continue the request sequentially to completion or until the next error is detected and displayed.

If no N ERC or N RAC occurs (no new error detected during the loop), there is no other way for you to regain control other than by pressing the *BREAK* (ATTN) key. The message *BREAK RECEIVED* appears, the request is stopped, and you may then enter one of the commands of the menu (A, G, C, R, or M).

**B BYPASS ERROR STOPS:** The diagnostic request is executed until an error is detected. On detection of the error, the DCF displays the error information; testing then resumes automatically until another error is

detected or until the request is complete. Every error detected is displayed in this way. You have no other way to regain control before the end of the request other than to press the *BREAK* (ATTN) key.

The message *BREAK RECEIVED* appears, the request is stopped, and you may then enter one of the commands of the menu (A, G, C, R, or M).

**DM DISPLAY MULTIPLE ERRORS:** The diagnostic request is executed until an error is detected. On detection of the error, the DCF displays the error information, aborts the routine, and automatically starts the next routine. In this way, only the first error detected in each routine is displayed. Execution then continues automatically until the request is complete. You have no other way to regain control before the end of the request other than to press the *BREAK* (ATTN) key.

The message *BREAK RECEIVED* appears, the request is stopped, and you may then enter one of the commands of the menu (A, G, C, R, or M).

**Note:** You may use any command of the **diagnostic execution modify** panel to:

- Abort the routine and continue the request from the next routine (if any).
- Continue the request.
- Cancel the request.
- Rerun the request from the beginning.
- Modify the option to another, or add any compatible option, then enter G (for go). The request continues to completion, until *REQUEST COMPLETE* is displayed, or until an error is detected and displayed.

### Wait Option NW/W

**NW NO WAIT BEFORE EXECUTION OF EACH ROUTINE:** This is the default option.

It cancels the W option, and allows the request to execute without a stop before routine execution.

**W WAIT BEFORE EXECUTION OF EACH ROUTINE:** The execution of the diagnostic request stops before each routine. Entering G (for go) starts the next routine in sequence.

The message *ROUTINE READY TO START* appears, the request is stopped, and you may then enter one of the commands of the menu (A, G, C, R, or M).

### Cycle Option C1/Cnnn/C

**C1 CYCLE = 1:** This is the default option.

The request is executed **once**, and ends with the *REQUEST COMPLETE* message.

**Cnnn CYCLE nnn TIMES:** The request is executed nnn times (nnn = 1 to 255).

After nnn cycles, the request ends and the message *REQUEST COMPLETE* is displayed.

**C CYCLE ON REQUEST:** The DCM executes the entire request, and then automatically restarts it.

This 'cycle' on the entire request continues indefinitely unless you press the *BREAK* (ATTN) key and change the option to C1.



## **Repeat Option R1/Rnnn**

R1 REPEAT EACH ROUTINE ONCE: This is the default option.

Each routine is executed once.

If you have selected Rnnn and want to return to the default option, modify Rnnn to R1.

Rnnn REPEAT EACH ROUTINE nnn TIMES: Each routine is executed nnn times (nnn: 1 to 255) before the next routine is executed.

## Diagnostic Work Area Description

Common and detailed diagnostic information is available on the diagnostic panels.

### Common Information

The common information area is permanently updated, depending on the monitoring of the IFT diagnostic runs. The following panel is presented after an error has been found by the diagnostic, and the selected option is stop on error (with or without the loop option). The panel in Figure 3-7 is only an example, and should not be used for troubleshooting.

A ABORT ROUTINE	*****
G GO	* RAC 185 *
C CANCEL REQUEST	* ADDR 02 20 * ERR BIT 0001
R RERUN REQUEST	* ERC QB010611 *
M MODIFY OPTIONS:	*****
S/LS/AL/ALS/B/DM	
NW/W	START 00:10:57 STOP 00:11:06
C1/CNNN/C	REQUEST: TSS 1 TSS DIAG RUNNING
R1/RNNN	OPTIONS: S NW C1 R1 ROUTINE QB01 ADP 03 L 20
	LINE AD 052
	*** ERROR FOUND ***
T COMMAND BARRED	ENTER REQUEST ACCORDING TO THE DIAG MENU
CCU FNCTN BARRED	==> G
==>	

Figure 3-7. Diagnostic Request Panel

## Work Area Description (Common Fields)

### ADDR

Indicates the logical address of the failing element in the controller. The first two digits give the CA, RDV, TRA, or scanner number; The last two digits give the line address or TIC number, if any.

### CE REPLY AREA

Initial request, command, answer to diagnostic message.

### Command Barring

One of the following lines, or both, may appear on the panel:

- T COMMAND BARRED: The action to be performed is displayed in the diagnostic menu.
- CCU FNCTN BARRED

### DCF MESSAGE AREA

ENTER REQUEST ACCORDING TO THE DIAG MENU

## DCF RUNNING REQUEST

- Initial request and current run options:: REQUEST: TSS 1  
OPTIONS: S NW C1 R1

## DCF RUN STATUS

Break received, error reporting, and so on, for example:: \*\*\* ERROR FOUND \*\*\*

## DIAG RUN STATUS

The information has the following format:: xxxx DIAG yyyyyyyy

where xxxx can be:

CCU  
IOCB  
CA  
TSS  
TRSS

and yyyyyyyy can be:

RUN INIT (DCF initialization phase)  
CCU INIT (CCU initialization phase)  
RUNNING  
RERUNNING  
CANCELED  
ENDED  
UNXPTD.ERR  
HUNG

ROUTINE QB01 ADP 01 L 20  
| | |  
| | Routine (01) | Line address 20 in scanner  
| | Section (B) |  
| | IFT (Q) | Scanner, TRA, or CA number  
LINE AD 052 (Line address 052 in 3720/21 (000 to 063))

## ERC (Error Reference Code)

This indicates whether you are working on the same fault or a new one (after a FRU replacement for example). It enables you to loop on one specific error only, disregarding all others or new ones, if any. The first four digits show the IFT number, section number, and routine number. The last four digits indicate the error number.

GB 02 78F6  
| |  
| |> Routine (GB02) Error number (ERC)  
| |> Section (GB)  
| |> IFT (G)

## TIMING AREA

- Indicates the initial time (starting from 00:00:00 because of MOSS maintenance IML).
- Indicates the time of every stop (for stop on error, request complete, or request canceled).

## ERR BIT

For the way in which to use its contents, see the *3720 Maintenance Information Reference* manual.

## DIAGNOSTIC MESSAGE AREA

Message from current IFT routine (blank in this routine).

### RAC (Repair Action Code)

This code is used with the repair action code index in the *3720 Maintenance Information Procedures (MIP)* manual.: The RAC-FRU list correspondence table requires a secondary code. Use Figure 3-8 on page 3-23 to create this secondary code before going to the *Maintenance Information Procedures* manual (MIP) to determine the list of the suspected FRUs, and the procedure to follow for their replacement. FRUs are identified by their generic names (for example, LIC3). Look up the FRU name in the FRU correspondence table in the *MIP*. Use the logical FRU address as required to find out the corresponding FRU location in your machine.

With the line address, and using the scanner board information tables, locate the different cards used by this line.

### RAC and Secondary Code

The FRU list table in the *Maintenance Information Procedures* manual requires both the RAC code and a secondary code. This secondary code is made up of the adapter number, the line number, and/or the suspected failing adapter.

In the example in Figure 3-7 on page 3-20:

- The RAC number is 185 the first value of the ADDR field.
- The adapter number is 01, that is, the first value of the ADDR field.
- The line number is 06, that is, the second value of the ADDR field.
- The ERC code is Q8010611.

Build the secondary code using the correspondence rules of Figure 3-8 on page 3-23.

For example for RAC 185, if ADDR field = 01 06, the secondary code will be 106.

RAC Number or RAC Range	Adapter number (ADDR)	Secondary Code
TSS RACs (ADDR=Scanner)		
100 - 1FF (LAB type A)	01 03	1LA (note 1) 3LA
300 - 3BF (LAB type B)	03 04	3LA 4LA
TRSS RACs (ADDR=TRA)		
3C0 - 3FF (LAB type C)	02	200 (TRM down) 201 (TIC 1 down) 202 (TIC 2 down)
IOC RACs (ADDR=RDV)		
602, 604-607, 60B, 616, 618, 61A, 61D, 620-628, 62C, 62E, 640, 642, 645, 647, 64B-64F, 650-653, 656, 658-65A, 660, 662-664	01 02 03 04	Fx1 or 0x1 (note 2) Fx2 or 0x2 Fx3 or 0x3 Fx4 or 0x4
CA RACs (ADDR=CA)		
680-684, 686-6FF	01 02	100 200
685	01 02	1x2 (note 3) 2x1

Figure 3-8. Building the Secondary Code

**Notes:**

1. LA is the line address (second value of ADDR).
2. First digit is 'F' if ERC is in the form xxxxFFFF, first digit is '0' otherwise.
3. The third digit is in the ADDIT INFO field.

## What to Do with the RAC

The repair action code displayed may be:

1. A real repair action code, which, associated to a secondary code, signals a hardware error and leads to a FRU list.

**Action:**

- a. Find the FRU corresponding to that RAC in the RAC table in Chapter 3 of the the *Maintenance Information Procedures* manual.
  - b. Change the FRU(s).
  - c. Run the diagnostics again.
2. A code used by the diagnostic programs to signal an error while running the diagnostic programs:
    - The DCM has not been able to run the diagnostics requested.
    - An error occurred in one of the diagnostic programs.

**Action:**

- a. Run the diagnostic again to see if the RAC is still displayed.
  - b. Check the machine for loose cards.
  - c. If you have a program name and an ERC, go to the diagnostic description manual.
  - d. Contact your support structure to determine if a diagnostic microcode fix MCF is available to correct the problem.
3. A code not found in the following table.

**Action:**

- Run the diagnostic again to see if the code is still displayed
- Check the machine for loose cards.
- Contact your support structure to determine if a diagnostic microcode *fix* is available to correct the problem.

120-12C 170-196	150-169 1A0-1A1	170-172		See RAC table in MIP
320-369 3A0-3A1	370-38B 3C0-3FF	390-396		
500-5FF				See Unexpected RACs (3-29)
601-602 60B 61A 62E 64B-64F 660 690-692	604-605 613 61D 640 650-653 662-664	607 616 620-628 642 656 670-671	609 618 62C 645-647 658-65A 680-687	See RAC table in MIP
870-876 8DD	878-882 8E0-8EA	886-88C 8EF-8FA	890-8C0 8FD-8FF	
900-9FF				Control panel codes (see note)
EE6				Control panel during CSU

Figure 3-9. RACs displayed on Console

**Note:** 900-9FF codes are simple messages intended for the user of the control panel to whom they show the progression of the diagnostic programs. They **should not** appear on the console, and must be treated as unexpected RACs.

## Detailed Diagnostic Information

There are two types of display:

- DIAG ERROR REPORTING (see Figure 3-10 on page 3-25) and
- DIAG/DCF UNEXPECTED ERROR (see Figure 3-11 on page 3-26).

These panels are examples, and should not be used for troubleshooting.

## Diagnostic Error Reporting Display

This is the panel presented after an error has been found by the diagnostic, and the chosen option is STOP on ERROR.

**Note:** Fields having characters and dots (for example, LOOP COUNT...) are displayed only when necessary.

They are all shown here in order to indicate the maximum available information displayed on the panel in case of error reporting.

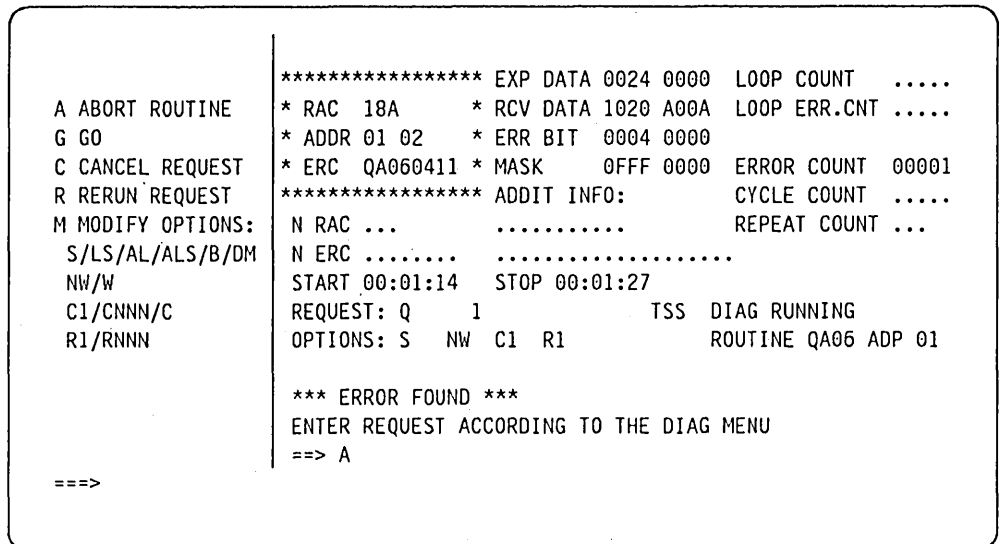


Figure 3-10. Diagnostic Error Reporting Panel

## Field Explanation for Diagnostic Errors

N ERC: Means new ERC (error reference code).

N RAC: Means new RAC (repair action code).

After a loop option is selected, a first error causes a loop to be maintained. If an error different from the first one occurs, it is displayed as N ERC and N RAC.

EXP DATA: 0024 0000

RCV DATA: 1020 A00A

ERR BIT: 0004 0000

MASK: 0FFF 0000

These four lines of information work together: any discrepancy between the EXP (expected) DATA and the RCV (received) DATA is taken into account if the corresponding MASK bit is on.

The ERR BIT can also be displayed alone. In this case, EXP DATA, RCV DATA and MASK fields are not displayed. For the way in which to use its contents, see the *3720 Maintenance Information Reference* manual.

ADDIT INFO: means additional information. The meaning varies with the routine that displays the additional information.

When the 'ADDIT INFO' field is used by a routine, its contents are to be found in the *Diagnostic Descriptions* manual.

LOOP COUNT: is incremented by one prior to the execution of a routine when looping on an error. The displayed value is incremented every time the loop is entered, whether the error occurs or not. The loop count is reset at the beginning of a request, at the start of a routine, or at any loop option change.

LOOP ERR CNT: means loop error count. The displayed value is incremented only when the referenced error (first error) occurs in the loop. The loop error count is reset at the beginning of a request, at the start of a routine, or at any loop option change. Comparing LOOP COUNT and

LOOP ERR CNT values helps determine the number of intermittent error occurrences.

**ERROR COUNT:** indicates the count of any error encountered while a request is running. A new request resets the error count. The displayed value is updated while the diagnostic is running.

**CYCLE COUNT:** indicates the current count of the Cnnn option you specified. The displayed value is updated while the diagnostic is running.

**REPEAT COUNT:** indicates the current count of the Rnnn option you specified. Modifying the option or starting a new request resets the repeat count.

## Diagnostic Unexpected Error Display

This is the panel presented after an UNEXPECTED ERROR has been found by the diagnostic. This is a **major** error; the diagnostic run cannot continue.

**Note:** In this case, NEW REQUEST is proposed to the CE. This means that the following is allowed:

CCU FNCTN (F1)  
MOVE TO SIA (F2)  
ALARM (F3)  
TERMINATE (T COMMAND)

SYSTEM INPUT AREA (SIA) ==>			
T:TERMINATE OFF: LOGOFF PF1: MOVE TO SIA PF2: CCU FNCTN PF3: ALARM			
DIAG	ADP#	LINE	
1 ALL			***** ORIGIN: MOSS<-IFT
2 CCU			* RAC 868 * LEVEL : X'01'
3 IOCB			* * LVLMSK: X'FF'
4 CA	1-> 2		* * ROUTINE BA03
5 TSS	1-> 4	0->31	***** ADDIT INFO:
6 OLT	1-> 2		RC= 84
AND			START 00:09:18 STOP 00:10:17
OPT = Y IF MODIFY			REQUEST: BA03 CCU DIAG UNXPTD.ERR
OPTION REQUIRED			OPTIONS: S NW C1 R1 ROUTINE BA03
			UNEXPECTED ERROR
			ENTER REQUEST ACCORDING TO THE DIAG MENU
==>			DIAG==> ADP#==> LINE==> OPT==> N

Figure 3-11. Diagnostic Unexpected Error Display (Sample)



## DCF Unexpected Error Display

This is the panel presented after an UNEXPECTED ERROR has been found by the DCF. This is a **major** error; the diagnostic run cannot continue. This panel is an example, and should not be used for troubleshooting.

**Note:** The displayed RAC may have multiple causes. The additional information field (ADDIT INFO), gives more detailed information.

PANEL MAINTENANCE IML MANDATORY.	*****	ORIGIN: MOSS<-DCM
	* RAC 50D	* LEVEL : X'01'
	*	* LVLMSK: X'FF'
	*	*
	*****	ADDIT INFO:
	AREA= 02 EXC.COD= 00	
	ON DATA XFER	4500
	REQUEST: Q	1
	OPTIONS: S	NW C1 R1
	UNEXPECTED ERROR	
T COMMAND BARRED		
==>		

Figure 3-12. DCF Unexpected Error Display Panel

## Description of Fields for Unexpected DCF RACs

In catastrophic cases, such as erroneous logical status, or return code not null after an I/O operation, the diagnostic control facility (DCF) displays a panel containing a special repair action code (RAC) referring to an **unexpected error**.

These RACs may be requested by any DCF component:

- DCM: Diagnostic Control Monitor
- CP MOSS: Command Processor - MOSS
- CP CCU: Command Processor - CCU
- CP CSP: Command Processor - CSP

In principle, an unexpected error RAC is meaningful only in perfectly debugged code. Therefore, during an investigation into an unexpected error, as a last possibility, you should suspect a *software error* in the DCF.

**500-510: Common RACs**

500 CDF not initialized  
501 Received event from CP rejected by DCM.  
502 Received event from DCM rejected by CP.  
503 Diagnostic Routine, known by DCM, not found by CP.  
504 SST access required by DCM, rejected by CP.  
505 Routine class not found by DCM in routine signature.  
506 CCU hardcheck detected in DCF by CP-CCU PS.  
507 CP CSP time-out detected in DCF by CP-CSP PS.  
508 IOCBUS time-out detected in DCF by CP-CSP PS.  
509 Unexpected scanner RCV event detected in DCF by CP-CSP PS.  
50A Console disconnected during a Diagnostic run done in Console mode.  
50B CP CCU Time-out detected in DCF by CP-CCU PS.  
510 INVALID loading request.

**511-519: RAC related to disk I/O error**

511 DCF load module (for MOSS).  
512 CDF data set.  
513 PICO data set.  
514 DIAG load module (for MOSS).  
515 DIAG data set (for CCU or CSP).  
516 RLOAD load module requested by Diag (for MOSS).  
517 RLOAD data set requested by Diag (for CCU or CSP).  
518 CP load module (for MOSS).  
519 CP data set (for CCU or CSP).

**520-52A: RAC related to data transfer (MOSS $\longleftrightarrow$ CCU)**

520 Write PICO data set into CCU.  
521 Write DIAG data set into CCU.  
522 Write RLOAD data set (requested by Diag) into CCU.  
523 Write CP data set into CCU.  
524 Write CDS data entry into CCU.  
525 Write SST data table into CCU.  
526 Write REPLY data (to Diag request RWTOR) into CCU.  
52A Read ANY data from CCU.

**530-54D: RAC related to PCW performed via IMAC**

530 Disable MOSS from any interrupts but TIMER.  
531 Write Cyclic LSSD.  
532 Start PICO CODE.  
533 Start PICO DIAGS.  
534 Get PICO DIAGS results.  
535 Enable PU interrupts.  
536 Init CP-CCU.  
537 Enable CRDV.  
538 Enable REDRIVE.  
539 Set 'adapter reset IOC' bit.  
53A Reset 'adapter reset IOC' bit.  
53B Enable IOCB cycle steal.  
53C Stop CCU.  
53D CCU Mail-Box IN.  
53E Disable IOCB cycle steal.

Figure 3-13 (Part 1 of 2). Unexpected RACs on Console

53F Set MOSS operative.  
 540 Enable scanner interrupts.  
 541 Reset scanner.  
 542 Run CSP checkouts.  
 543 Get CSP checkout results.  
 544 Set MOSS area (in CCU) address.  
 545 Enable/Disable PA Interrupt.  
 546 ROS scanner Mail-Box IN + scanner IPL (CP-CSP loading)  
 547 ROS scanner Get command completion.  
 548 ROS scanner initialization.  
 549 Read CA Bus register.  
 54A Write hexadecimal display value.  
 54B Blank hexadecimal display value.  
 54C Disable MOSS from PU and CSP interrupts.  
 54D Read panel status.

**553-556: RAC related to PICO DIAGS results**

553 PICO DIAGS 3 result KO.  
 554 PICO DIAGS 4 result KO.  
 555 PICO DIAGS 5 result KO.  
 556 PICO DIAGS 6 result KO.

**561-563: RAC related to CSP ROS return code**

561 CSP ROS checkout KO.  
 562 CSP ROS IPL failing (CP-CSP loading).  
 563 CSP ROS Get command completion KO on scanner IPL.

**581-58C: RAC related to CP MOSS**

581 CP MOSS level 7. IFT domain active during CP process.  
 582 CP MOSS level 7. CP domain active without CP task.  
 583 CP MOSS level 0. No associated IFT.IH level 0.  
 584 CP MOSS level 1. No associated IFT.IH level 1.  
 585 CP MOSS level 4. No associated IFT.IH level 4.  
 586 CP MOSS level 0. Unexpected interrupt level 0 for CP.  
 587 CP MOSS level 1. Unexpected interrupt level 1 for CP.  
 588 CP MOSS level 4. Unexpected interrupt level 4 for CP.  
 58A CP MOSS level 0. PCW exercised via CHGMACAC fails.  
 58B CP MOSS level 1. PCW exercised via CHGMACAC fails.  
 58C CP MOSS level 4. PCW exercised via CHGMACAC fails.

**5A0-5A0: RACs related to CP CCU**

5A0 CP CCU. Unexpected situations at any level.

**5C0-5CE: RACs related to CP CSP**

5C0 CP CSP. CP and IFT not working with same SRB  
 (level 0, 1, 2, 7).  
 5C1 CP CSP. CP-DCM IOCB communication errors (level 0, 7).  
 5C3 CP CSP level 0. Interrupt requ. by CP without reason.  
 5C4 CP CSP level 7. IFT domain active during CP process.  
 5C5 CP CSP level 7. CP domain active without CP task.  
 5C6 CP CSP level 0. No associated IFT.IH level 0.  
 5C7 CP CSP level 1. No associated IFT.IH level 1.  
 5C8 CP CSP level 2. No associated IFT.IH level 2.  
 5C9 CP CSP level 0. Unexpected interrupt level 0 for CP.  
 5CA CP CSP level 1. Unexpected interrupt level 1 for CP.  
 5CB CP CSP level 2. Unexpected interrupt level 2 for CP.  
 5CC CP CSP level 3. Unexpected interrupt level 3 for CP.  
 5CD CP CSP level 4. Unexpected interrupt level 4 for CP.  
 5CE CP CSP level 5. Unexpected interrupt level 5 for CP.

Figure 3-13 (Part 2 of 2). Unexpected RACs on Console

## CP Additional Information Meaning

All RACs reported by each command processor (CP) are self-explanatory; there is no standard format.

## DCM Additional Information Meaning

This area is structured as follows:

- The first line indicates the exercised area (AREA=) and the current operation exception code (EXC.COD=) in this area.
- The second line displays the logical DCF status at the time of the operation. It consists of a DCF message with the following format:

ON condition = wxyz

where condition is the DCF logical status, and wxyz is the DCF value.

### Exercised

Area Code	Area Name
00	Control code
01	Disk
02	Panel MIOC
03	CCU IOC
04	Timer

### Exception Code Area

Area Code	Exception Code List
00	(not used)
01	Disk adapter list
02	Panel adapter list
03	Panel adapter list
04	Timer adapter list

### Condition

ON condition	Area	Meaning
ON Event/State	00	Event wx received on state yz is rejected
ON Routine	00	Routine wxyz (for example AB01) does not exist in current IFT header
ON SST Offset	00	The offset wxyz in IFT Sequence table is wrong.
ON (module name) or ON (file name)	01	Module or file: empty or not found, already open or closed
ON Data Transfer	02	wxyz reflects last MIOC command sent
ON Data Transfer	03	wxyz reflects last message sent to CP

---

## How to Run Channel Adapter Online Tests (OLTs)

Online tests (OLTs) are channel tests loaded from the host CPU as channel exercisers.

Detailed explanations of online tests are given in *3720 Communications Controller Channel Adapter Online Tests*, D99-3720A.

### OLT Procedure.

1. Check that the host operator has loaded the correct level of OLTs for the 3720.
2. On the **diagnostic function selection** panel:
  - a. Type 6 (for OLTs) next to DIAG==>.
  - b. Type 1 or 2 next to ADP==> for the channel adapter you want to test.
  - c. Press **SEND**.
3. When you are prompted to enable the channel adapter under test:
  - a. Set to *Enbl* (up) the switch corresponding to that channel adapter on the control panel.
  - b. Press **SEND**.

## Chapter 4. Transmission Subsystem (TSS) Functions

Transmission subsystem (TSS) functions help you debug the 3720 scanners.

In this chapter we will see the panels and procedures for all scanner functions.

### Selecting TSS Functions

First, display the **(Service) 3720 function menu** panel. This panel is displayed after you entered the maintenance password on the **Password** panel or if you used the MOSS CE switch 3.

- Type *TS* in the *S/A*, then press *SEND*.

The **TSS function selection** panel is displayed (see Figure 4-1).

All possible TSS functions are displayed in the *secondary* menu (left side of the panel):

1. SELECT/RELEASE; see page 4-3
2. DUMP/IML; see page 4-4
3. MODE CONTROL; see page 4-7
4. DPLY/ALT STORE; see page 4-9
5. DPLY/ALT BLOCKS; see page 4-11
6. DPLY/ALT LSR; see page 4-13
7. DPLY/ALT XREG; see page 4-14
8. ADDRESS COMPARE; see page 4-15
9. CHK-POINT TRACE; see page 4-17

```

      MSA line 1
      MSA line 2
      MSA line 3
CUSTOMER ID: ..... 3720-1      SERIAL NUMBER: xxxxxxxx
----- MAINTENANCE MODE -----
FUNCTION ON SCREEN: TSS FUNCTIONS

SYSTEM INPUT AREA (SIA) ==>
T:TERMINATE OFF: LOGOFF PF1: MOVE TO SIA PF2: CCU FNCTN PF3: ALARM
1 SELECT/RELEASE
2 DUMP/IML
3 MODE CONTROL
4 DPLY/ALT STORE
5 DPLY/ALT BLOCKS
6 DPLY/ALT LSR
7 DPLY/ALT XREG
8 ADDRESS COMPARE
9 CHK-POINT TRACE
```

Figure 4-1. TSS Function Selection Panel

## Scanner Selection

Before you call any TSS function (except for checkpoint trace where the selection is made automatically), you must select a scanner. If you try to call a TSS function before selecting a scanner, the message SELECT A SCANNER is displayed.

**Warning:** TSS functions may disrupt communications on the lines attached to the selected scanner.

The following table identifies the potential risks:

Function	Disruptive
2- Dump a scanner or IML a scanner	Always
3- Stop and reset scanner mode control	Always
4- Display/alter scanner control store	May be
5- Display/alter control blocks	May be
6- Display/alter local store registers	May be
7- Display/alter external registers	May be
8- Scanner address compare	Always
9- Scanner microcode checkpoint trace	May be

## Messages

Refer to Appendix B for the message explanations and for the action to be taken for some messages displayed when TSS functions are run.



---

## Select/Release Scanner Function

- Type **1** in the **SIA**, of the **TSS function selection** panel (see "Selecting TSS Functions" on page 4-1), then press **SEND**.

The **select/release scanner** panel will be displayed (see below).

FUNCTION ON SCREEN: TSS FUNCTIONS

SYSTEM INPUT AREA (SIA) ==>

T:TERMINATE OFF: LOGOFF PF1: MOVE TO SIA PF2: CCU FNCTN PF3: ALARM

1 SELECT/RELEASE 2 DUMP/IML 3 MODE CONTROL 4 DPLY/ALT STORE 5 DPLY/ALT BLOCKS 6 DPLY/ALT LSR 7 DPLY/ALT XREG 8 ADDRESS COMPARE 9 CHK-POINT TRACE	- TO SELECT A SCANNER, ENTER:  THE SCANNER NUMBER PRECEDED BY S (S1 TO S4) OR THE LINE ADDRESS (00 TO 63)  - TO RELEASE SELECTED SCANNER, ENTER REL
--	---

==>

Figure 4-2. Select/Release Scanner Panel

### Selecting a Scanner

To select a scanner you may:

1. Type either its number or the address of one of its lines:
  - Scanner 1 (3720-1/2): Line addresses 00 through 27
  - Scanner 1 (3720-11/12): Line addresses 00 through 15
  - Scanner 3 (3721-1): Line addresses 32 through 63
  - Scanner 3 (3721-2): Line addresses 32 through 47
  - Scanner 4 (3721-2): Line addresses 48 through 63

**Note:** Scanner 2 does not exist.

2. Press **SEND**.

### Releasing a Scanner

To release the scanner previously selected:

- Type **REL**, then press **SEND**.

---

## Dump/IML (Scanner)

Before you call the DUMP/IML function, you must first select a scanner (4-3).

**Warning:** IML and dump functions are always disruptive to the selected scanner.

Before doing a scanner dump, it is desirable to disconnect the scanner. If the scanner is not disconnected, then, after re-IML, the following sequence should be done to inform the control program that a re-IML has taken place:

1. Connect
2. Disconnect
3. Connect

### Dump or IML Selection Procedure

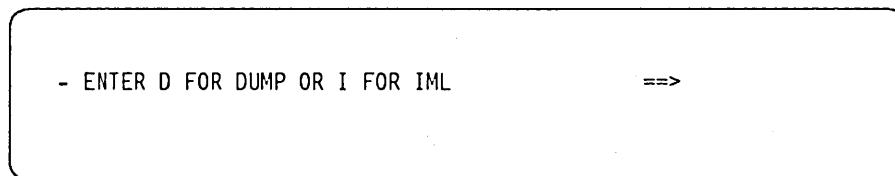
From the **TSS function selection** panel (see Figure 4-1 on page 4-1):

- Type 2 in the *S/A*, then press *SEND*.

The **DUMP or IML scanner** panel is displayed (see Figure 4-3).

From this panel you may:

- Request to dump a scanner; see page 4-5
- Request to IML a scanner; see page 4-6



- ENTER D FOR DUMP OR I FOR IML                      ==>

Figure 4-3. Dump or IML Scanner Panel

## Dump a Scanner

You have entered *D* on the **Dump or IML scanner** panel.

The **scanner dump limits** panel is displayed (see Figure 4-4).

SCANNER DUMP

- ENTER DUMP LIMITS:

LOWER LIMIT ADDRESS (HALFWORDS)	==> 8000
UPPER LIMIT ADDRESS (HALFWORDS)	==> FFFF

HEX ROS LIMITS:	000 - FFF (4K)
HEX RAM LIMITS:	1000 - FFFF (60K)

Figure 4-4. Scanner Dump Limits Panel

### Field Explanation for Scanner Dump Limits Panel

**LOWER LIMIT ADDRESS:** Enter the hexadecimal address corresponding to the point from which you want the dump to start.

**UPPER LIMIT ADDRESS:** Enter the hexadecimal address corresponding to the point at which you want the dump to finish.

**HEX ROS LIMITS:** Gives the ROS dump limit ranges.

**HEX RAM LIMITS:** Gives the RAM dump limit ranges.

### Requesting a Scanner Dump.

From the **Scanner Dump Limits** panel:

1. Type the lower limit address.
2. Type the upper limit address.
3. Press **SEND**.

- If the CHHDMP file on MOSS disk is empty, the scanner dump is immediately taken and filed in the CHHDMP, and the message

DUMP FILED IN CHHDMP. TO PRINT DUMP, TRANSFER IT TO HOST

appears on the panel. (See "File Transfer and Print at Host Location" on page 12-14 for dump transfer.)

- If the CHHDMP dump file is already occupied with a previous dump, the **clear scanner dump file** panel is displayed (see Figure 4-5 on page 4-6), with the message:

CHHDMP SCANNER DUMP FILE IS NOT EMPTY

You may then clear or keep the scanner dump (see "Clearing or Keeping the Scanner Dump" on page 4-6).

TO CLEAR DUMP FILE, ENTER C, OTHERWISE PRESS SEND ==>

CHHDMP SCANNER DUMP FILE IS NOT EMPTY

Figure 4-5. Clear Scanner Dump File Panel

## Clearing or Keeping the Scanner Dump

You may either erase the previous dump or keep it.

- To clear the dump file
  - Type **C** next to ==>, then press **SEND**.

If you clear the dump file, the new dump is immediately taken.

- To keep the previous dump file
  - Press **SEND**

If you keep the dump, you may either display it at the operator console, transfer it to the host in order to print it, or transfer it to a support function, using a remote support facility (see "Receiving a File from MOSS" on page A-12).

## IML a Scanner

You have entered **/** on the **dump/IML scanner selection** panel.

The IML takes place, and you are informed that the IML is complete by the following message:

IML FOR SCANNER XX COMPLETE - SCANNER CAN BE CONNECTED

Connect the scanner to the control program (see page 4-7).

If an error prevents a scanner from being re-IMLed, the following message is displayed:

SCANNER CHECKOUT FAILED: RC=xxxx

**Note:** The return code (RC) is found in the STAT field of the BER type 01, ID05, that has been created (see the chapter *BER* in the *Maintenance Information Reference* manual).

---

## Scanner Mode Control

### Scanner Mode Control Selection Procedure

Use this function to modify the mode of a scanner.

First, select a scanner.

1. Type 3 in the *S/A*, of the **TSS function selection** panel. (see Figure 4-1 on page 4-1)
2. Press *SEND*.

The **scanner mode control selection** panel is displayed (see Figure 4-6).

From this panel you may:

- Enter the new mode control, next to ==> (see "Mode Control Commands" for more details), then press *SEND*.

SELECT SCANNER CONTROL COMMAND (SP, ST, CT, DS, RT)==>

SP = STOP  
ST = START  
CT = CONNECT  
DS = DISCONNECT  
RT = RESET

Figure 4-6. Scanner Mode Control Selection

### Mode Control Commands

The table in Figure 4-7 on page 4-8 lists the scanner commands that you may use to modify the scanner mode. It also gives the new mode resulting from the command, and the indications that appear in the *MSA*. The DUMP and IML commands can be used by selecting DUMP/IML on the TSS function menu. The START, STOP, CONNECT, and RESET commands can be used by selecting MODE CONTROL on the TSS function menu.

MOSS must be in ONLINE mode:

- To control a scanner fully
- To IML a scanner

In MOSS OFFLINE mode, only the START, STOP, RESET, IML, and DUMP commands can be executed.

In MOSS-ALONE mode, only the RESET, DUMP, and IML commands can be executed.

Current Mode	Possible Scanner Commands	Resulting Mode	MSA Field m
Connected	STOP DISCONNECT RESET DUMP IML	Disconnected/stop Disconnected/stop Reset Reset Initialized	DISCTD/STOP DISCTD/STOP RESET RESET INITIALIZED
Disconnected/go	STOP CONNECT RESET DUMP IML	Disconnected/stop Connected Reset Reset Initialized	DISCTD/STOP CONNECTED RESET RESET INITIALIZED
Disconnected/stop	START CONNECT RESET DUMP IML	Disconnected/go Connected Reset Reset Initialized	DISCTD/GO CONNECTED RESET RESET INITIALIZED
Reset (or unknown mode)	RESET DUMP IML	Reset Reset Initialized	RESET RESET INITIALIZED
Initialized	STOP CONNECT RESET IML DUMP	Disconnected/stop Connected Reset Initialized Reset	DISCTD/STOP CONNECTED RESET INITIALIZED RESET
Inoperative	RESET DUMP IML	Reset Reset Initialized	RESET RESET INITIALIZED

Figure 4-7. Scanner Commands that Modify the Scanner Mode

## Connected

The scanner is connected when it runs under the control of the control program. The errors on CCU I/O instructions are reported to the control program, and the errors on MOSS I/O instructions are reported to the MOSS.

## Disconnected

The scanner is disconnected when it does not run under the control of the control program but under the control of the MOSS microcode. Only the MOSS I/O instructions are executed. Any instructions from the CCU are rejected (IOC timeout), or not answered.

**Warning:** RESET, IML, and DUMP are always disruptive. DISCONNECT and STOP may be disruptive.

---

## Display/Alter Scanner Control Storage Function

**Warning:** Any alter may be disruptive.

### Selecting Scanner Display/Alter Control Storage Function

Use this function to display the control storage of a selected scanner, or modify (alter) the contents of this storage.

First, select a scanner.

- Type 4 in the *S/A*, of the **TSS function selection** panel (see "Selecting TSS Functions" on page 4-1), then press *SEND*.

The **display/alter scanner storage selection** panel is displayed (see Figure 4-8).

### Displaying the Scanner Control Storage

From the **display/alter scanner storage selection** panel:

1. Type the starting address (hexadecimal halfword).
2. Type the number of halfwords to be displayed (32 by default).
3. Type *D* or *I*:
  - If you enter *D*, the execution of the display is delayed (see "Scanner Address Compare" on page 4-15).
  - If you enter *I*, the execution of the display is immediate.
4. Press *SEND*.

When you press *SEND*, the **scanner storage display** panel is displayed (see Figure 4-9 on page 4-10).

The first four characters of each displayed line give the storage addresses.

### Scanner Storage Display PF Keys

PF4=ALTER - See "Altering the Scanner Control Storage" on page 4-10.

PF5=REFRESH - Re-displays data every 500ms. This allows you to view data in its most updated state. To stop the refresh, press *BREAK* (ATTN).

PF7=BACKWARD - Displays preceding data. The amount of data that will be displayed has already been specified when defining the Display function.

PF8=FORWARD - Displays next data. The amount of data that will be displayed has already been specified when defining the Display function.

```
ENTER HALFWORD STORAGE ADDRESS          ==> 8000
ROS: 000 TO FFF - RAM: 1000 TO FFFF
ENTER NUMBER OF HALFWORDS TO DISPLAY (UP TO 32) ==> 32

ENTER I FOR IMMEDIATE EXECUTION, D FOR DELAYED ==> I

TO ALTER DATA, SPECIFY AN IMMEDIATE DISPLAY
```

Figure 4-8. Display/Alter Scanner Storage Selection Panel

```

ENTER HALFWORD STORAGE ADDRESS          ==> A700
ROS: 000 TO FFF - RAM: 1000 TO FFFF
ENTER NUMBER OF HALFWORDS TO DISPLAY (UP TO 32) ==> 32

ENTER I FOR IMMEDIATE EXECUTION, D FOR DELAYED ==> I

A700 2BF8 33FE 5072 67FD 5272 671D 50C2 686A
A708 8A64 CB25 8A30 4A20 510E 9638 F76F 8C60
A710 4B0B 33E1 51C6 E870 4318 31EE 219E 0700
A718 31EE 0700 B10F 4820 67C9 D17F 4A82 CB05

PF4=ALTER  PF5=REFRESH  PF7=BACKWARD  PF8=FORWARD

```

Figure 4-9. Scanner Storage Display Panel

## Altering the Scanner Control Storage

To alter data, press **PF4** on the **scanner storage display** panel.

The **scanner storage alter** panel is displayed (see Figure 4-10).

From this panel:

1. Move the cursor to the data you wish to modify (the cursor is automatically positioned below the first character of the displayed data).
2. Modify the data.
  - If you wish to delay the alter, replace **I** by **D** on the **IMMEDIATE** or **DELAYED** line, then move the cursor back to the data you want to alter.
  - If you enter **I**, the execution of the alter is immediate.
3. When you have altered all desired characters, press **SEND**.

All displayed data, altered or not, is transmitted to the scanner.

```

ENTER HALFWORD STORAGE ADDRESS          ==> A700
ROS: 000 TO FFF - RAM: 1000 TO FFFF
ENTER NUMBER OF HALFWORDS TO DISPLAY (UP TO 32) ==> 32

ENTER I FOR IMMEDIATE EXECUTION, D FOR DELAYED ==> I

A700 2BF8 33FE 5072 67FD 5272 671D 50C2 686A
A708 8A64 CB25 8A30 4A20 510E 9638 F76F 8C60
A710 4B0B 33E1 51C6 E870 4318 31EE 219E 0700
A718 31EE 0700 B10F 4820 67C9 D17F 4A82 CB05

PF6=IGNORE ALTER
TO DELAY ALTER, CHANGE I TO D. ENTER NEW DATA, PRESS SEND

```

Figure 4-10. Scanner Storage Alter Panel

**Alter Scanner Control Storage PF Key:** **PF6=IGNORE ALTER:** Cancels alter mode. The modifications you have already entered on the screen are ignored.



---

## Display/Alter Scanner Blocks

### Selecting Display/Alter Scanner Blocks

Use this function either to display the blocks of a selected scanner, or to modify (alter) the contents of these blocks.

First select a scanner.

From the **TSS function selection** panel:

- Type 5 in the *SIA*, then press *SEND*.

The **display/alter scanner blocks selection** panel is displayed (see Figure 4-11).

- ENTER HEX LINE INTERFACE ADDRESS (0 TO 3F) ==>  
- ENTER HALFWORD TO DISPLAY FIRST ==> 0  
- ENTER NBR OF HALFWORDS TO DISPLAY (OPTIONAL) ==>  
- ENTER BLOCK IDENTIFICATION (1 TO 10) ==>  
    1=ICB 3=LIB 5=RAMA 7=RAMC 9=LIC  
    2=PSA 4=LCB 6=RAMB 8=ICC 10=FPS  
- ENTER I FOR IMMEDIATE EXECUTION, D FOR DELAYED ==> I  
  
TO ALTER DATA, SPECIFY AN IMMEDIATE DISPLAY.

Figure 4-11. Display/Alter Scanner Blocks Selection Panel

### Field Explanation for Display/Alter Scanner Blocks

**LINE INTERFACE ADDRESS:** Specify a hexadecimal interface address,

Between 00 and 37 for scanner 1 installed on the 3720 Models 1 and 2

Between 00 and 1F for scanner 1 installed on the 3720 Models 11 and 12

Between 00 and 3F for scanner 3 installed on a 3721-1

Between 00 and 1F for scanner 3 installed on a 3721-2

Between 00 and 1F for scanner 4 installed on a 3721-2

**HALFWORD TO DISPLAY FIRST:** Specify the halfword from which the block will be displayed; if you enter no operand, the block will be displayed from its first halfword.

**NBR OF HALFWORDS:** Specify the number of halfwords that you want to display, starting from the halfword specified on the previous line. The message **INVALID INPUT** is displayed when the input is incorrect (for example, 0 to specify the number of halfwords to be displayed).

The size of each block is:

ICB=16, PSA=16, LCB=16, LIB=32, FPS=16

ICC=1, LIC=2, RAMA=4, RAMB=4, RAMC=4

For ICC and LIC, you may ignore this request.

**BLOCK IDENTIFICATION:** Specify the block that you want to display:

ICB: interface control block

PSA: parameter/status area (copy of CCU PSA for this line)

LIB: line interface buffer

LCB: line control block

RAMA: random access memory A  
RAMB: random access memory B  
RAMC: random access memory C  
ICC: internal clock circuit  
LIC: line interface card  
FPS: FES parameter/status

Refer to the *Maintenance Information Reference* manual for a detailed description of these blocks.

IMMEDIATE/DELAYED:

- If you enter *D* in the IMMEDIATE or DELAYED line, the execution of the display is delayed (see "Scanner Address Compare" on page 4-15).
- If you enter *I*, the execution of the display is immediate.

The message at the bottom line reminds you that, if you want to alter data, you must first perform an immediate display of the data to be altered.

When you press *SEND*, a panel similar to the **scanner storage display** panel is displayed. From this panel, you may press *PF4* to modify (alter) the data.

The display/alter block function, and the descriptions of the PF keys available, are similar to those of the display/alter storage function (explained in detail in "Displaying the Scanner Control Storage" on page 4-9).

However, the first four characters of each displayed line give:

- The address of the ICB, PSA, LIB, LCB, or FPS block, or
- The name of the RAMA, RAMB, RAMC, ICC, or LIC block

## Display/Alter Scanner LSRs

### Selecting Display/Alter Scanner LSR Function

Use this function to display the local store registers (LSR) of a selected scanner, or to modify (alter) the contents of these registers.

First select a scanner.

From the **TSS function selection** panel:

- Type 6 in the *S/A*, then press *SEND*.

The **display/alter scanner LSR selection** panel is displayed (see Figure 4-12).

- ENTER HEXADECIMAL PAGE NUMBER ==>

- ENTER ADDRESS OF LSR TO DISPLAY (0 TO 7) ==>  
(FOR ALL LSRs OF THE PAGE, ENTER NOTHING)

- ENTER I FOR IMMEDIATE EXECUTION, D FOR DELAYED ==> I

LSR	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
DATA	1914	9914	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	C6EB	07AB						

TO ALTER DATA, SPECIFY AN IMMEDIATE DISPLAY

Figure 4-12. Display/Alter Scanner LSR Selection Panel

### Field Explanation for Display/Alter Scanner LSRs

**PAGE NUMBER:** Enter x. (where x = 0 through F) to select one of the 16 LSR pages (one LSR page = 8 one-byte registers).

**ADDRESS OF LSR:** Enter the address of the register to be displayed, or press *SEND*.

- If a register address is entered, a single even/odd register pair is displayed. The least significant bit of the register address is ignored.
- If *SEND* is pressed (without LSR number), and the page number entered was even, then all 16 registers of the even/odd pages are displayed, numbered 0 through F.
- If *SEND* is pressed, and the page number entered was odd, only the eight registers of the odd page are displayed, numbered 0 through 7.

**IMMEDIATE/DELAYED:**

- If you enter *D* in the IMMEDIATE or DELAYED line, the execution of the display is delayed (see "Scanner Address Compare" on page 4-15).
- If you enter *I*, the execution of the display is immediate.

The message at the bottom line reminds you that, if you want to alter data, you must first perform an immediate display of the data to be altered.

When you press **SEND**, a panel similar to the **scanner storage display** panel is displayed. From this panel, you may press **PF4** to modify (alter) the data.

The display/alter LSR function, and the descriptions of the PF keys available, are similar to those of the display/alter storage function (explained in detail in 4-9).

The **LSR** line gives the LSR numbers, and the **DATA** line gives the LSR contents.

---

## Display/Alter Scanner XREGs

### Selecting Display/Alter Scanner XREG Function

Use this function to display the external registers (XREG) of a selected scanner, or to modify (alter) the contents of these registers.

First select a scanner.

From the **TSS function selection** panel:

- Type 7 in the **S/A**, then press **SEND**.

The **display/alter scanner XREGs selection** panel is displayed (see Figure 4-13).

- ENTER HEX ADDRESS OF XREG TO DISPLAY FIRST ==>

- ENTER NUMBER OF XREGS TO DISPLAY ==>

- ENTER I FOR IMMEDIATE EXECUTION, D FOR DELAYED ==> I

XREG	00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08										
DATA	xx	xx	xx	xx	xx	xx	**	xx	xx	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**
XREG	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	1A	1B	1C	1D	1E	1F			
	xx	**	xx	xx	xx	xx	xx	xx	**	xx	xx	xx	xx	xx	xx	xx	xx	xx	xx

TO ALTER DATA, SPECIFY AN IMMEDIATE DISPLAY

Figure 4-13. Display/Alter Scanner XREGs Selection Panel

### Field Explanation for Display/Alter Scanner XREGs

**ADDRESS OF XREG:** Enter the address of the register to be displayed, or press **SEND**.

**NUMBER OF XREGS:** Specify the number of external registers that you want to display. If **SEND** is pressed (without a number of XREGs), all 32 registers are displayed.

**IMMEDIATE/DELAYED:**

- If you enter **D** in the **IMMEDIATE** or **DELAYED** line, the execution of the display is delayed (see "Scanner Address Compare" on page 4-15).
- If you enter **I**, the execution of the display is immediate.

The message at the bottom line reminds you that, if you want to alter data, you must first perform an immediate display of the data to be altered.

When you press **SEND**, a panel similar to the **scanner storage display** panel is displayed. From this panel, you may press **PF4** to modify (alter) the data.

The display/alter XREG function, and the descriptions of the PF keys available, are similar to those of the display/alter storage function (see page 4-9).

However, the **XREG** line gives the XREG numbers, and the **DATA** line gives the XREG contents.

**Notes:**

1. Independent of the register specified or the number of registers displayed, the display always starts with an even register and ends with an odd register.
2. A pair of asterisks under a register position indicates that the register does not exist.

---

## Scanner Address Compare

You execute a scanner address compare to force the scanner to perform an action when a storage address detected during a specific access operation matches the contents of a register.

You must specify the address, the access operation, and the scanner action.

**Warning:** The address compare function with action STOP is always disruptive.

## Scanner Address Compare Selection

First select a scanner.

From the **TSS function selection** panel:

- Type 8 in the **S/A**, then press **SEND**.

The **scanner address compare selection** panel is displayed (see Figure 4-14).

- ENTER A TO ACTIVATE AC OR D TO DEACTIVATE    ==> A

- ENTER HALFWORD STORAGE ADDRESS (1000 TO FFFF) ==> 1000

- SELECT 1 TO 4 STORAGE ACCESSES (F, S, R, W)    ==> RW  
F = I-FETCH OR DATA LOAD    S = DATA STORE  
R = CYCLE STEAL READ        W = CYCLE STEAL WRITE

- SELECT ONE SCANNER ACTION (1, 2, 3, 4, 5)    ==>  
1 = NO ACTION                2 = START DELAYED DISPLAY  
3 = START DELAYED ALTER    4 = STOP SCANNER  
5 = STOP SCANNER BUT LEAVE AC ACTIVE

Figure 4-14. Scanner Address Compare Selection Panel

## Field Explanation for Scanner Address Compare Panel

ACTIVATE or DEACTIVATE: Enter *A* to activate the address compare. Enter *D* to deactivate the address compare (see 4-17).

STORAGE ADDRESS: Specify an address within the range indicated.

STORAGE ACCESSES: Specify any combination of the following storage access operations. When the storage address specified on the panel is detected during anyone of these operations, the address compare is successful.

F: Address detected during I-fetch or load

S: Address detected during store

R: Address detected during cycle steal read

W: Address detected during cycle steal write

The *SCANNER ACTION* you specify is executed immediately after the execution of the storage access operation (F, S, R, W).

SCANNER ACTION: You can specify only one scanner action:

1. NO ACTION: You just want to be informed of the completion of the address compare in fields *o* and *p* of the MSA.

After completion, the address compare is automatically deactivated.

2. START DELAYED DISPLAY: When the address compare is successfully completed, the delayed display that you specified in a display/alter function is performed and the address compare is automatically deactivated. The keyboard is locked until the address compare is successfully completed. If you want to unlock the keyboard, press BREAK (ATTN). This action also deactivates the address compare.

If you specified a delayed display, field *o* of the MSA displays DELAYED-DISPLAY.

If you forgot to specify a delayed display and you specified in the address compare ACTION ==> 2, the following message is displayed:

NO DELAYED DISPLAY. SPECIFY IT IN A DISP/ALT FUNCTION

3. START DELAYED ALTER: When the address compare is successfully completed, the delayed alter that you specified in a display/alter function is executed and the address compare is automatically deactivated. The keyboard is locked until the address compare is successfully completed. If you want to unlock the keyboard, press ATTN. This action also deactivates the address compare.

If you specified a delayed alter, field *q* of the MSA displays DELAYED-ALTER.

If you forgot to specify a delayed alter and you specified ACTION ==> 3 in the address compare, the following message is displayed:

NO DELAYED ALTER. SPECIFY IT IN A DISP/ALT FUNCTION

4. STOP SCANNER: When the address compare is successfully completed, the scanner is no longer under control of the CCU control program and the address compare is automatically deactivated. The scanner is in DISCONNECTED/STOP state (see field *m* of the MSA).

5. STOP SCANNER BUT LEAVE AC ACTIVE: When the address compare is successfully completed, the scanner, in DISCONNECTED/STOP state, is no longer under control of the CCU control program but the address compare remains active.

To restart the scanner, use the scanner command START (see "Scanner Mode Control" on page 4-7).

## Deactivating the Scanner Address Compare

- Scanner address compare is automatically deactivated after successful completion for address compare with ACTION 1, 2, 3, or 4.
- To deactivate the address compare function with ACTION 5, press *D* followed by *SEND*.
- To deactivate the scanner address compare function **before** completion of the address compare, proceed according to the type of scanner address compare action:
  - Action 1, 4, or 5: Type *D*, then press *SEND*.
  - Action 2 or 3: press *BREAK* (ATTN). If the address compare panel is no longer displayed, you must:
    1. Call again the Scanner Address Compare function (see beginning of this section).
    2. Type *D* instead of *A* in the activate/deactivate line.
    3. Press *SEND*.
- The scanner address compare is also deactivated when:
  - You release the scanner.
  - You type *T* (terminate) in the *S/A*.

---

## Scanner Checkpoint Trace

The checkpoint trace is always ready to start at the same time as the SIT trace starts. Use this function to stop the checkpoint trace.

The checkpoint trace is fully described in the *Maintenance Information Reference manual*.

## Selecting the Scanner Checkpoint Trace Function

From the **TSS function selection** panel:

- Type 9 in the *S/A*, then press *SEND*.

The **scanner checkpoint trace selection** panel is displayed (see Figure 4-15 on page 4-18).

- ENTER A DECIMAL LINE ADDRESS FROM 0 to 63 ==>

- ENTER T FOR TRANSMIT, R FOR RECEIVE ==>

- ENTER ON OR OFF ==>

ON - CHECKPOINT TRACE WILL START WITH  
SCANNER INTERFACE TRACE (SIT)

OFF - CHECKPOINT TRACE NOT EFFECTIVE

ENTER ANY INTERFACE:RELEASE/SELECT SCANNER IS AUTOMATIC

Figure 4-15. Scanner Checkpoint Trace Selection Panel



---

## Chapter 5. Displaying Dumps, Storage, and Modules, Deleting Files

---

### Displaying Dumps, Storage, and Modules

This section explains how to display:

- The NCP dump file on disk; see page 5-2
- The MOSS dump file on disk; see page 5-3
- The Scanner dump file on disk; see page 5-5
- The TIC dump files on disk; see page 5-7
- The MOSS storage; see page 5-9
- The modules (TSS, CCU, and MOSS); see page 5-10

To display you must use:

- A function called *Dump Display/Delete (DD)* for MOSS, TIC, and scanner dump display.
- A function called *MOSS Storage Display (MS)* for MOSS storage display.
- A function called *Module Display (MD)* for CCU, TSS and MOSS module display.

**Note:** All these functions are available only when the **3720 function menu** panel has been presented in service mode (maintenance password or MOSS CE switch 3 ON).

## Displaying an NCP Dump

Procedure:

1. First, on the **3720 function menu** panel:
  - Type *DD* in the *S/A*, then press *SEND*.
2. From the **dump display/delete selection** panel that is then displayed (see Figure 5-1):
  - Type the name of the NCP dump file (CHGDMP1), then press *SEND*.

The **NCP dump** panel will be displayed.

**Note:** If you press *SEND* without any file name in the file name area, a summary list of the dump files will be displayed with the date and time of the dump (if it exists) and the reasons for taking the dump. See the sample panel in Figure 5-3 on page 5-3.

- ENTER FILE NAME ==>

CHGDMP1 = NCP DUMP FILE  
CHGDMP = MOSS DUMP FILE  
CHHDMP = CS DUMP FILE  
CHGTRSS = TRSS DUMP FILE

PF6: DELETE FUNCTION  
PRESS SEND TO DISPLAY DUMP TITLES

Figure 5-1. Dump Display/Delete Selection Panel (NCP dump)

The complete dump is displayed in **dump display** panels (12 lines per panel). How to read dump panels is explained in "Hexadecimal Display of Dumps" on page 5-11.

You may from this panel:

- Display the rest of the dump, using *PF7* (BACKWARD), *PF8* (FORWARD),
- Return to the **dump display/delete selection** panel by pressing *PF4*.

## Displaying a MOSS Dump

Procedure:

1. First, on the **3720 function menu** panel:
  - Type **DD** (for DUMP DISPLAY/DEL) in the **SIA**, then press **SEND**.
2. From the **dump display/delete selection** panel that is then displayed (see Figure 5-2):
  - Type the name of the MOSS dump file (CHGDMP), then press **SEND**.

**Note:** If you press **SEND** without any file name in the file name area, a summary list of the dump files will be displayed with the date and time of the dump (if it exists) and the reasons for taking the dump (except for the TRSS dump file). See the sample panel in Figure 5-3.

```
----- MAINTENANCE MODE -----  
FUNCTION ON SCREEN: DUMP/DISPLAY DEL  
  
SYSTEM INPUT AREA (SIA) ==>  
T:TERMINATE OFF: LOGOFF PF1: MOVE TO SIA PF2: CCU FNCTN PF3: ALARM  
  
- ENTER FILE NAME ==>  
  
CHGDMP1 = NCP DUMP FILE  
CHGDMP = MOSS DUMP FILE  
CHHDMP = CS DUMP FILE  
CHGTRSS = TRSS DUMP FILE  
  
PF6: DELETE FUNCTION  
PRESS SEND TO DISPLAY DUMP TITLES
```

Figure 5-2. Dump Display/Delete Selection Panel (MOSS Dump)

### Dump File Summary Panel

This panel is displayed when no dump file name has been typed into the **dump display/delete selection** panel.

```
- ENTER FILE NAME ==>  
  
CHGDMP1 = NCP DUMP FILE  
CHGDMP = DATE/TIME:07/28/82 18:27:26 TRS:BAD CP ANS  
CHHDMP = CS DUMP FILE  
CHGTRSS = TRSS DUMP FILE  
  
PF6=DELETE FUNCTION  
PRESS SEND TO DISPLAY DUMP TITLES
```

Figure 5-3. Dump File Summary Panel (Sample)

## MOSS Dump Area Selection

You have selected to display the MOSS dump file CHGDMP, and the **MOSS dump area selection** panel is displayed (see Figure 5-4).

You may display either the full dump file or only a specific area.

- To display the full dump, press **SEND** **without** any selection. The complete dump is displayed in **dump display** panels (12 lines per panel). How to read dump panels is explained in "Hexadecimal Display of Dumps" on page 5-11.
- To display a specific area, type the number corresponding to that area (next to SELECT AN ITEM (0 to 19) ==>), then press **SEND**.

If the selection is correct, a specific part of the dump is displayed in the **MOSS area display** panel. You may from this panel:

- Display the rest of the dump, using **PF7** (BACKWARD), **PF8** (FORWARD), or **SEND** (see "Hexadecimal Display of Dumps" on page 5-11).
- Return to the **MOSS dump area selection** panel by pressing **PF4**.

- SELECT AN ITEM (0 TO 19) ==>

CHGDMP DATE/TIME=07/28/82 18:27:26 TRS=BAD CP ANS

0 TO 7: INTERRUPT DATA

8: ERROR COUNTERS

9: SVT

10: BER STACK

---TCB---

11: BER

12: MSA

13: CCUBG

14: CAM

15: OPCTL

16: IPL

---ACB---

17: CNSL

18: MIOC

19: DISK

PF4: ITEM SELECT

PF7: BACKWARD

PF8: FORWARD

PRESS SEND TO DISPLAY FILE

Figure 5-4. MOSS Dump Area Selection Panel

---

## Displaying a Scanner Dump

Procedure:

1. First, on the **3720 function menu** panel:
  - Type *DD* in the *S/A*, then press *SEND*.
2. From the **dump display/delete selection** panel that is then displayed (see Figure 5-5):
  - Type the name of the Scanner dump file (CHHDMP), then press *SEND*.

The **scanner dump area selection** panel will be displayed (see "Scanner Dump Area Selection" on page 5-6).

**Note:** If you press *SEND* without any file name in the file name area, a summary list of the dump files will be displayed with the date and time of the dump (if it exists) and the reasons for taking the dump. See the sample panel in Figure 5-3 on page 5-3.

- ENTER FILE NAME ==>

CHGDMP1 = NCP DUMP FILE  
CHGDMP = MOSS DUMP FILE  
CHHDMP = CS DUMP FILE  
CHGTRSS = TRSS DUMP FILE

PF6: DELETE FUNCTION  
PRESS SEND TO DISPLAY DUMP TITLES

Figure 5-5. Dump Display/Delete Selection Panel (CS dump)

## Scanner Dump Area Selection

You have selected to display the Scanner dump file CHHDMP, and the **scanner dump area selection** panel is displayed (see Figure 5-6).

You may display either the full dump file or only a specific area.

- To display the full dump, press **SEND** **without** any selection. The complete dump is displayed in **dump display** panels (12 lines per panel). How to read dump panels is explained in "Hexadecimal Display of Dumps" on page 5-11.
- To display a specific area, type the number corresponding to that area (next to SELECT AN ITEM (0 or 1) ==>), then press **SEND**.

If the selection is correct, a specific part of the dump is displayed in the **scanner dump area display** panel. You may from this panel:

- Display the rest of the dump, using **PF7** (BACKWARD), **PF8** (FORWARD), or **SEND** (see "Hexadecimal Display of Dumps" on page 5-11).
- Return to the **scanner dump area selection** panel by pressing **PF4**.

```
- SELECT AN ITEM (0 OR 1) ==>  
CHHDMP  DATE/TIME=00/00/00 00:31:11  SCANNER 01  
  
0: PAGES 0 TO B AND PSWS  
1: EXTERNAL REGISTERS  
  
PF4: ITEM SELECT    PF7: BACKWARD    PF8: FORWARD  
PRESS SEND TO DISPLAY FILE
```

Figure 5-6. Scanner Dump Area Selection Panel

---

## Displaying a TRSS (TIC) Dump

This function can be used to display or delete a TIC dump previously created with the TRS function *Dump TIC Storage* (option 6), or by an automatic TIC dump.

The TRSS dump file, CHGTRSS resides on MOSS disk along with the MOSS dump (CHGDMP) and the scanner dump (CHHDMP).

Procedure:

1. First, on the **3720 function menu** panel:
  - Type *DD* in the *S/A*, then press *SEND*.
2. From the **dump display/delete selection** panel that is then displayed (see Figure 5-7):
  - Type the name of the TRSS dump file (CHGTRSS), then press *SEND*.

**Note:** If you press *SEND* without any file name in the file name area, a summary list of the dump files will be displayed with the date and time of the dump (if it exists) and the reasons for taking the dump. See the sample panel in Figure 5-3 on page 5-3.

- ENTER FILE NAME ==>

CHGDMP1	=	NCP	DUMP FILE
CHGDMP	=	MOSS	DUMP FILE
CHHDMP	=	CS	DUMP FILE
CHGTRSS	=	TRSS	DUMP FILE

PF6: DELETE FUNCTION  
PRESS SEND TO DISPLAY DUMP TITLES

Figure 5-7. Dump Display/Delete Selection Panel (TRSS dump)

## TIC Dump Selection

You have selected to display the TRSS dump file CHGTRSS, and the **TIC dump selection** panel is displayed. (see Figure 5-8 on page 5-8).

Since the TRSS dump contains up to 4 TIC dumps, the panel displays the time and date for each TIC dump present.

You may display up to four TIC dumps.

- To display a specific TIC dump, type the number corresponding to that area (next to **SELECT AN ITEM** (0 or 3) ==>), then press *SEND*.

If the selection is correct, a summary of the TIC dump selected is displayed in the **TIC dump summary** panel (see Figure 5-9 on page 5-8).

- To display the complete TIC dump use the forward and backward PF keys.

```
- SELECT AN ITEM (0 TO 3) ==> -
CHGTRSS  TRSS  DUMP FILE

0: TRA:02 TIC:1    DATE/TIME:mm/dd/yy hh:mm:ss
1: TRA:02 TIC:2    DATE/TIME:mm/dd/yy hh:mm:ss
2: TRA:02 TIC:2    DATE/TIME:mm/dd/yy hh:mm:ss
3: TRA:02 TIC:1    DATE/TIME:mm/dd/yy hh:mm:ss
```

**Figure 5-8. TIC Dump Selection Panel**

[illegible]

**Figure 5-9. TIC Dump Summary Panel**

Press PF4 to return to the **TIC Dump Selection** panel.



## Displaying the MOSS Storage

Procedure:

1. Type *MS* (for MOSS STORE DPLY) in the *S/A* on the **3720 function menu** panel.
2. press *SEND*.

The **MOSS storage area selection** panel is displayed (see Figure 5-10).

You may display either the full dump file or only a specific area.

- To display the full dump, press *SEND* **without** any selection. The complete dump is displayed in **dump display** panels (12 lines per panel). How to read these panels is explained in "Hexadecimal Display of Dumps" on page 5-11.
- To display a specific area, type the number corresponding to that area (next to SELECT AN ITEM (0 to 19) ==>), then press *SEND*.

If the selection is correct, a specific part of the dump is displayed in the **MOSS storage area display** panel. You may from this panel:

- Display the rest of the dump, using *PF7* (BACKWARD), *PF8* (FORWARD), or *SEND* (see "Hexadecimal Display of Dumps" on page 5-11).
- Return to the **MOSS storage area selection** panel by pressing *PF4*.

```
----- MAINTENANCE MODE -----
FUNCTION ON SCREEN: MOSS STORE DPLY

- SELECT AN ITEM (0 TO 19) ==>

0 TO 7: INTERRUPT DATA      ---TCB---    ---ACB---
      8: ERROR COUNTERS      11: BER        17: CNSL
      9: SVT                  12: MSA        18: MIOC
     10: BER STACK           13: CCUBG       19: DISK
                              14: CAM
                              15: OPCTL
                              16: IPL

PF4: ITEM SELECT      PF7: BACKWARD    PF8: FORWARD
PRESS SEND TO DISPLAY FILE
```

Figure 5-10. MOSS Storage Area Selection Panel

---

## Module DPLY (Module Display)

This function allows you to display a CCU, TSS, or MOSS module.

### Procedure

1. Type *MD* (for MODULE DISPLAY) in the *S/A* of the **3720 function menu** panel.
2. Press *SEND*.

The **module display selection** panel is displayed (see Figure 5-11).

If the selection is correct, the complete dump of the module is displayed in **dump display** panels (12 lines per panel). How to read dump panels is explained in "Hexadecimal Display of Dumps" on page 5-11.

```
----- MAINTENANCE MODE -----  
FUNCTION ON SCREEN: MODULE DISPLAY  
  
- ENTER FILE NAME ==> CHGUCMOD  AND MODULE NAME ==> CHGMOSS  
  
CHGUCMOD=  MOSS MODULES  
CHGMDJIB=  SCANNER MODULES  
CHGMOD37=  3720 MODULES  
CHGPIMOD=  PICOCODE MODULES
```

Figure 5-11. Module Display Selection Panel

---

## Hexadecimal Display of Dumps

The dump is displayed on a panel in hexadecimal format.

From this panel you may:

- Display the contents of the previous lines (*PF7*, BACKWARD) or the next lines (*PF8*, FORWARD).
- Display another section of the dump by:
  1. Placing cursor at the left of the dump listing (any line)
  2. Overwriting list address with a specific address
  3. Pressing *SEND*.

The panel will display a new section of the dump starting from the address you just entered.

- Display the **dump delete selection** panel by pressing *PF6*.

This is valid only for MOSS or scanner dumps (see "Deleting a File from MOSS Disk" on page 5-12).

- Return to the **MOSS/scanner/TIC selection** panel by pressing *PF4*.
- Display another dump by typing its file name next to ENTER FILE NAME and pressing *SEND*.

**Note:** When using *PF7* and *PF8* keys after a new starting address has been selected, the scrolling affects only the lines following the new address entry line (the preceding lines remain unchanged).

---

## Deleting a File from MOSS Disk

This section explains how to delete one or several of the following MOSS disk files:

- CHGDMP, the MOSS dump
- CHHDMP, the scanner dump
- CHGTRSS the TRSS dump
- CHGCIL, the BER file

To delete the MOSS dump files you must use a function called *Dump Display/Delete* which is available only when the **3720 function menu** panel has been presented via the maintenance password or when the MOSS CE switch 3 is on (see "How to Start, Select, and Perform a MOSS-3720 Function" on page 1-8)

**Note:** The NCP Dump file CHGDMP1 can only be deleted by a VTAM command sent from the host.

## Selecting the File Delete Function

Procedure:

From the **3720 function menu** panel:

- Type **DD** (for DUMP DISPLAY/DEL) in the *S/A*, then press **SEND**.

The **dump display/delete selection** panel is displayed (see Figure 5-12).

To delete the NCP dump file, the MOSS dump file, the scanner dump file, the BER file, or a TIC dump:

- Press **PF6** without any file name.

The **file delete selection** panel is displayed (see Figure 5-13 on page 5-13).

- ENTER FILE NAME ==>

CHGDMP1 = NCP DUMP FILE  
CHGDMP = MOSS DUMP FILE  
CHHDMP = CS DUMP FILE  
CHGTRSS = TRSS DUMP FILE

PF6: DELETE FUNCTION  
PRESS SEND TO DISPLAY DUMP TITLES

Figure 5-12. Dump Display/Delete Selection Panel (Delete)

- ENTER FILE NAME TO BE DELETED ==>

CHGDMP = MOSS DUMP FILE  
CHHDMP = CS DUMP FILE  
CHGTRSS = TRSS DUMP FILE  
CHGCIL = BER FILE

PF6=DUMP DISPLAY FUNCTION

Figure 5-13. Dump or BER File Delete Panel

## Deleting the MOSS Dump File

Procedure:

1. Select the *Dump Display/Delete* function (see page 5-12).
2. Press *PF6* (delete) without any name in the file name area.

From the **file delete selection** panel that is then displayed (see Figure 5-13):

1. Type CHGDMP, then press *SEND*.

The file will be deleted from the disk and an acknowledgment message will be displayed.

To return to the **dump display/delete selection** panel, press *PF6*.

## Deleting the Scanner Dump File

Procedure:

1. Select the *Dump Display/Delete* function (see page 5-12).
2. Press *PF6* (delete) without any name in the file name area.

From the **file delete selection** panel that is then displayed (see Figure 5-13):

1. Type CHHDMP, then press *SEND*.

The file will be deleted from the disk and an acknowledgment message will be displayed.

To return to the **dump display/delete selection** panel, press *PF6*.

## Deleting a TIC Dump

Procedure:

1. Select the *Dump Display/Delete* function (see page 5-12).
2. Press *PF6* (delete) without any name in the file name area.

From the **file delete selection** panel that is then displayed (see Figure 5-13):

1. Type CHGTRSS, then press *SEND*.

The **TIC Dump Delete Selection** panel will be displayed (see Figure 5-14 on page 5-14).

1. Enter the number (0 to 3) corresponding to the TIC dump (1 to 4) that you want to delete from the TRSS dump file.

## 2. Press **SEND**

The TIC dump will be deleted from the TRSS dump file (CHGTRSS). The TRSS dump file is deleted when all TIC dumps are deleted. Acknowledgment messages will be displayed.

To return to the **dump display/delete selection** panel, press **PF6**.

```
- SELECT AN ITEM (0 TO 3) ==> _  
  
0: DUMP ITEM 0 - TRA:02 TIC:1  
1: DUMP ITEM 1 - TRA:02 TIC:2  
2: DUMP ITEM 2 - TRA:02 TIC:2  
3: DUMP ITEM 3 - TRA:02 TIC:1  
  
PF6: QUIT
```

```
- SELECT AN ITEM (0 TO 3) ==> 3  
  
0: DUMP ITEM 0 - TRA:02 TIC:1  
1: DUMP ITEM 1 - TRA:02 TIC:2  
2: DUMP ITEM 2 - TRA:02 TIC:2  
3: DUMP ITEM 3 - TRA:02 TIC:1  
  
CHGTRSS DUMP ITEM 3 NOW EMPTY  
  
PF6: QUIT
```

Figure 5-14. TIC Dump Delete Selection Panel (Sample)

## TIC Dump Organization

Four TIC dumps may be stored on the CHGTRSS dump file on the disk.

The TIC dumps are assigned to a free "slot" in the TRSS dump file in the order they are taken. There is no static allocation of TIC dumps to the CHGTRSS file.

The sector in the CHGTRSS dump file is described in "TIC Dump Area" on page 11-12.

## Deleting the BER File

Procedure:

1. Select the *Dump Display/Delete* function (see page 5-12).
2. Press *PF6* (delete) without any name in the file name area.

From the **file delete selection** panel that is then displayed (see Figure 5-13 on page 5-13):

1. Type *CHGCIL*, then press *SEND*.

The file will be deleted from the disk and an acknowledgment message will be displayed.

To return to the **dump display/delete selection** panel, press *PF6*.





---

## Chapter 6. Applying and Displaying Microcode Fixes (MCF)

This chapter explains how the customer and the service personnel can:

- Upgrade the 3720 microcode to include the latest MCFs (and restore this microcode to its previous state).
- List old and new MCFs.
- Display the MCF history table.

### Terminology notes:

- The procedure by which this set of MCFs will be applied to modify the existing microcode is referred to as **UPGRADE**
- The last MCF applied (previous EC or previous set of MCFs) is referred to as **last applied MCF**.

## What Are Microcode Fixes and Patches

The MCF function available with 3720 MOSS is made of **two distinct functions**:

### 1. The **microcode fix** (MCF)

This is the code distributed to correct a microcode defect.

An MCF:

- Is tested
- Is a high quality change
- Is suitable for broad distribution
- Is considered functionally equivalent to a software PTF.

This chapter explains **microcode fix** procedures.

### 2. The microcode patch (referred to as patch).

A microcode patch corrects or bypasses a single microcode or hardware logic design defect.

The patch management function is used by **IBM Product engineering (PE)** to make code changes to the microcode files on MOSS disk. (Chapter 7 explains in detail how to handle patches.)

---

## MCF Organization

The MCF function can be used (upgraded, restored, and displayed) by the customer, as well as by the service personnel.

### When to Use the MCF Function

This function should be used by the customer (or the service personnel):

- If an MCF is sent to the customer to correct some possible microcode error.
- If an engineering change (EC) has to be installed on the customer's 3720 (an EC diskette may contain some MCFs that have not been included in the EC itself).

"Installing Microcode Fixes (MCFs)" on page 6-12 explains the complete procedure to follow when installing an MCF. The customer or the service personnel may install MCFs but **the transfer of the MCF file is a CE function**.

Chapter 'MCF' of the *3720 Extended Services* manual (as well as this chapter) explain the procedures required to handle MCFs.

The MCF management is automatic, in order to decrease installation problems and manipulation errors.

### Receiving MCFs:

MCFs are received by the 3720:

- From RETAIN via RSF.
- As an addition to ECs.
- From a PC diskette (see Appendix A, "MOSS File Transfer/Print from PC" on page A-1), when there is no RSF.

### MCF File

The MCFs, once on the MOSS disk, are in a file that contains **all** the MCFs created since the last EC. This file is sorted in chronological order of MCF creation, so that new MCFs are *appended*.

The MCF file contains two types of MCFs:

- The *Old* MCFs, which have been applied in a earlier upgrade of the microcode, and which are now definitively part of the code.
- The *New* MCFs, which have just been transferred to the MCF file (not used to upgrade the code).

You may scan individually (display) old MCFs, but new MCFs are considered as a burst of MCFs that may be applied completely or not at all.

The procedure by which this set of MCFs will be applied to modify the existing microcode is referred to as **UPGRADE**.

An Upgrade is automatic; that is, if an upgrade cannot be terminated, all new MCFs that have just been applied are restored (Roll Back).

You may also request to come back to the previous microcode state using the **RESTORE** command, which restores the microcode as it was before you applied the last burst of MCFs.

## MCF History Table

A history table is created to keep a trace capability. This table contains all upgrade and restore functions that have been executed, and, for each of these functions, the last applied MCF and the execution date.

## Conditions for Handling Microcode Fixes

- MOSS must not be *ONLINE*.
- MOSS IML must have been made from the *disk*, **not in diskette mode**

Figure 6-1 shows the function and data flow in MCF management.

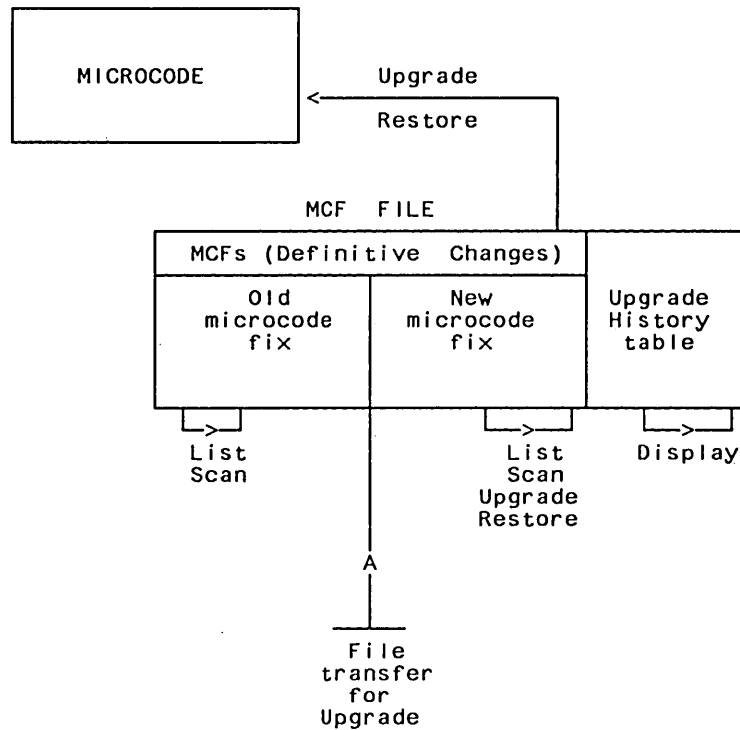


Figure 6-1. Microcode Fix Flow

## Accessing the MCF Management Function

You must first display the **3720 function menu** panel (first panel displayed after you entered the password on the **Password** panel (or MOSS CE switch 3 on).

- Type **MCF** (for MCF/Patch) in the **SIA**, then press **SEND**.

The **MCF/patch selection** panel will be displayed (see Figure 6-2).

```
MSA line 1
MSA line 2
MSA line 3
CUSTOMER ID: ..... 3720-1 SERIAL NUMBER: xxxxxxx
----- MAINTENANCE MODE -----
FUNCTION ON SCREEN: MICROCODE FIXES

SYSTEM INPUT AREA (SIA) ==>
T:TERMINATE OFF: LOGOFF PF1: MOVE TO SIA PF2: CCU FNCTN PF3: ALARM
- SELECT FUNCTION 1 OR 2 ==>

1 = MCF MANAGEMENT
  (UPGRADE OR RESTORE CODE, LIST, HISTORY TABLE)

2 = PATCH MANAGEMENT

EC LEVEL = 1234567
```

Figure 6-2. MCF/Patch Selection Panel

From the **MCF/patch selection** panel:

- Type **1** (for MCF) next to **SELECT A FUNCTION**, then press **SEND**.

The **MCF function selection** panel will be displayed (see Figure 6-3 on page 6-5).

From this panel you select to:

- Display the MCF history table; see page 6-6
- Upgrade the 3720 microcode to include the latest MCFs; see page 6-8
- Restore the 3720 microcode to its previous state (before including MCFs); see page 6-11
- List old and new MCFs; see page 6-7.

MCF MANAGEMENT

LAST APPLIED MCF = MCFID19

- SELECT ONE OPTION (1 TO 5) ==>

1 = DISPLAY HISTORY TABLE

2 = AUTOMATIC UPGRADE OF THE MICROCODE

3 = AUTOMATIC RESTORE OF THE MICROCODE

4 = LIST OLD MCF(S)

5 = LIST NEW MCF(S)

Figure 6-3. MCF Function Selection Panel

### Microcode State Concept

The microcode state is identified with the LAST APPLIED MCF.

The MCF file concept is that MCFs are not independent: each MCF file contains all old MCFs, plus the new ones.

The LAST APPLIED MCF displayed corresponds to the identifier of the last MCF applied (either by means of an Engineering Change (EC), or by means of an MCF upgrade).

#### Warning:

The MCF file is always checked for validity, and if not perfect, the MCF management is forbidden to the customer, and the following message is displayed :  
INCORRECT MCF FILE: CONTACT SERVICE REPRESENTATIVE

## Displaying the MCF History Table

The MCF history table is a trace of modifications brought to the microcode through upgrade and restore of MCFs.

This table displays the identifier of the last MCF applied by the upgrade or restore function, and the date of execution.

### Procedure

1. Type **1** on the **MCF function selection** panel (see Figure 6-3 on page 6-5).
2. Press **SEND**.

An **MCF history table** panel will be displayed (see example in Figure 6-4).

MCF HISTORY		
MM/DD/YY		LEVEL
06/18/84	CODE UPGRADED TO LEVEL	MCFID4
08/21/84	CODE UPGRADED TO LEVEL	MCFID8
08/21/84	CODE UPGRADE/RESTORE FAILED	
08/22/84	CODE RESTORED TO LEVEL	MCFID4
08/28/84	CODE UPGRADED TO LEVEL	MCFID8
11/03/84	CODE UPGRADED TO LEVEL	MCFID10
02/13/85	CODE UPGRADED TO LEVEL	MCFID12
02/13/85	CODE RESTORED TO LEVEL	MCFID10
PF5: BOTTOM      PF6: QUIT      PF8: FORWARD		

Figure 6-4. MCF History Table Display (Sample)

## Listing Old and New MCFs

### Listing Old MCFs

- Type 4 on the **MCF function selection** panel (see Figure 6-3 on page 6-5), then press **SEND**.

An **old MCF list** panel will display the identifiers and the title of the old MCFs (see example in figure below).

IDENTIFIER	OLD MCF(S)	SCREEN 1/3
MCFID1 A ==>	AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA	
MCFID2 A ==>	BBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBB	
MCFID3 A ==>	CCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCC	
MCFID4 A ==>	DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD	
MCFID5 A ==>	EEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEE	
MCFID6 A ==>	FFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF	
MCFID7 A ==>	GGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGG	
MCFID8 A ==>	HHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHH	
(A=APPLIED. OLD MCF(S) ARE ALWAYS APPLIED)		
- TO SCAN AN MCF, ENTER S AGAINST IDENTIFIER		
PF5:BOTTOM	PF6:QUIT	PF8:FORWARD

Figure 6-5. Old MCF List Panel (Sample)

### Listing New MCFs

- Type 5 on the **MCF function selection** panel, (see Figure 6-3 on page 6-5), then press **SEND**.

A **new MCF list** panel will display the identifiers and the title of the new MCFs (see example in figure below).

IDENTIFIER	NEW MCF(S)	SCREEN 1/3
MCFID20 N ==>	TTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTT	
MCFID21 N ==>	UUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUUU	
MCFID22 N ==>	VVVVVVVVVVVVVVVVVVVVVVVVVVVVVVVVV	
MCFID23 N ==>	WWWWWWWWWWWWWWWWWWWWWWWWWWWWWW	
MCFID24 N ==>	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	
MCFID25 N ==>	YYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYY	
MCFID26 N ==>	ZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZ	
MCFID27 N ==>	00000000000000000000000000000000	
(A=APPLIED, N=NON-APPLIED)		
- TO SCAN AN MCF, ENTER S AGAINST IDENTIFIER		
PF5:BOTTOM	PF6:QUIT	PF8:FORWARD

Figure 6-6. New MCF List Panel (Sample)

## MCF Upgrade of Microcode

This function allows you to upgrade the microcode to include all MCFs contained in the MCF set (that is, all MCFs released since the last EC).

### Procedure

- Type 2 on the **MCF function selection** panel (see Figure 6-3 on page 6-5), then press **SEND**.

If it is the first time, you are requested to enter the date.

An **MCF upgrade of microcode** panel will be displayed (see examples in Figure 6-7 and Figure 6-8).

Once requested, the upgrade is done automatically, and the progress of the upgrade is displayed on the panel.

When the upgrade is completed, as shown on the display panel, press **SEND** to terminate the function.

**Note:** If you want to use the new microcode, you must re-IML. This causes the transfer of the new code from disk to storage.

IDENTIFIER	UPGRADE OF MICROCODE
MCFIG20	APPLIED
MCFIG21	APPLIED
MCFIG22	APPLIED
MCFIG23	APPLIED
MCFIG24	APPLIED
MCFIG25	APPLIED
MCFIG26	APPLIED
MCFIG27	APPLIED
- UPGRADE IN PROGRESS	

Figure 6-7. MCF Upgrade of Microcode (Sample 1)

IDENTIFIER	UPGRADE OF MICROCODE
MCFIG28	APPLIED
MCFIG29	APPLIED
MCFIG30	APPLIED
- UPGRADE COMPLETED, PRESS SEND	

Figure 6-8. MCF Upgrade of Microcode (Sample 2)



## Error During MCF Upgrade

Two types of error could occur during an upgrade.

- Data errors

If one of the MCFs contained in the set cannot be applied (perhaps due to a conflicting local patch applied), the upgrade function is stopped, and all applied MCFs are *restored (undone)*.

Figure 6-9 and Figure 6-10 show examples of an error followed by an automatic restore.

- Disk error

**When a disk error occurs during an upgrade, the MCF function is canceled, and any future access will recover the upgrade.**

There is no roll-back in this case, since it is not a logical error but a *hardware* error, which must be corrected before anything else.

Figure 6-11 on page 6-10 shows an example of a disk error during an upgrade.

[illegible]

**Figure 6-9. Data Error During MCF Upgrade (Sample 1)**

```

IDENTIFIER                                RESTORE OF MICROCODE

MCFID25      RESTORED
MCFID24      RESTORED
MCFID23      RESTORED
MCFID22      RESTORED
MCFID21      RESTORED
MCFID20      RESTORED

- RESTORE COMPLETED. PRESS SEND

```

**Figure 6-10. Data Error During MCF Upgrade (Sample 2)**

IDENTIFIER	UPGRADE OF MICROCODE
MCFID20	APPLIED
MCFID21	APPLIED
MCFID22	APPLIED
MCFID23	APPLIED
MCFID24	NOT APPLIED: DISK ERROR
MCFID25	==> YYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYY
MCFID26	==> ZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZ
MCFID27	==> 000000000000000000000000000000000000
- UPGRADE IN PROGRESS	
DISK(ETTE) ERROR: MCF FUNCTION CANCELED	

Figure 6-11. Disk Error During MCF Upgrade (Sample)

## MCF Restore

This function is used to restore the microcode to what it was before the last MCF upgrade.

This may be required if this upgrade does not suit the 3720.

The restore process is identical to the upgrade process.

### Procedure

- Type 3 on the **MCF function selection** panel (see Figure 6-3 on page 6-5), then press **SEND**.

An **MCF restore of microcode** panel will be displayed (see examples in Figure 6-12 and Figure 6-13).

Once requested, the restore is done automatically, and the progress of the restore is displayed on the panel.

When the restore is completed, as shown on the display panel, press **SEND** to terminate the function.

IDENTIFIER	RESTORE OF MICROCODE	SCREEN 1/2
MCFID20	RESTORED	
MCFID21	RESTORED	
MCFID22	RESTORED	
MCFID23	RESTORED	
MCFID24	RESTORED	
MCFID25	RESTORED	
MCFID26	RESTORED	
MCFID27	RESTORED	
- RESTORE IN PROGRESS		

Figure 6-12. MCF Restore of Microcode (Sample 1)

IDENTIFIER	RESTORE OF MICROCODE	SCREEN 1/1
MCFID28	RESTORED	
MCFID29	RESTORED	
MCFID30	RESTORED	
- RESTORE COMPLETED, PRESS SEND		

Figure 6-13. MCF Restore of Microcode (Sample 2)

---

## Installing Microcode Fixes (MCFs)

There are several ways to get microcode fixes:

- The remote support center transferred the MCFs from a PC to the MOSS disk (see Appendix A, "MOSS File Transfer/Print from PC" on page A-1).
- URSF, through RETAIN, transferred the MCFs onto the MOSS disk (see *3720 RETAIN URSF Guide*, ZZ33-7001).
- You have received EC diskettes that also contain the latest MCFs (those that could not be distributed separately).

Let's assume that **the MCFs to be installed (upgraded) are on the MOSS disk file**. These MCFs, when installed, will modify the 3720 microcode to the latest level; that is, with all microcode fixes issued since the last EC. The microcode changes:

- Correct errors in the microcode.
- Reflect the latest modifications to the 3720 functions.

### MCF Installation Procedure

When installing a set of MCFs, the following sequence **MUST** be followed:

1. **The MOSS IML must be made from disk** and the rotary switch must be in *NORMAL* mode.
2. Enter the maintenance password on the **Password** panel (or use the MOSS CE switch 3).

The **3720 function menu** panel is displayed.

3. Select the MCF function on that panel:
  - a. Type *MCF* (for Microcode fix) in the *SIA*, then press *SEND*.

The **MCF/patch function selection** panel is displayed

4. Apply the MCFs (Upgrade function) that are on the MOSS disk (see "MCF Upgrade of Microcode" on page 6-8).
5. Set the *FUNCTION SELECT* switch to *NORMAL*.
6. IML MOSS from Disk.

The storage now contains the updated version of the microcode for MOSS. Next scanner IML will use the new scanner microcode (if any).

---

### MCF File Organization

The files for the management of the MCFs are in the **SECONDARY** diskette space (in order to permit the patch of the Primary diskette in Degraded mode).

- The name of the microcode fix file is CHGMCF.
- The name of the history table file is CHGMCFHT.
- The size of CHGMCF is 53 sectors (to have 92 patches changing up to 52 bytes each.)

---

## Chapter 7. Handling Patches to Microcode

This chapter explains how the service personnel can:

- Create
- List
- Scan (display the contents)
- Modify
- Apply
- Erase
- Restore
- Copy from and to MOSS disk

one or more microcode *PATCHES*.

### What Are Microcode Fixes and Patches

The MCF function available with 3720 MOSS is made of **two distinct functions**: the microcode fix, and the microcode patch.

#### The Microcode Fix (MCF)

This is the code distributed to correct a microcode defect. The 'MCF' chapter of the *3720 Extended Services* manual gives all details concerning the procedures required. Chapter 6 of this manual describes the procedure required by the service personnel.

#### The Microcode Patch (Patch)

The *Microcode Patch* (referred to as patch) corrects or bypasses a single microcode or hardware logic design defect. A patch:

- Is a response to a high-severity problem.
- Has minimal test requirement.
- Has a very limited distribution.
- Is functionally equivalent to the software *superzap*.

A microcode patch permits also tuning up the microcode. Patch management, as opposed to MCF management, is flexible.

The patch management function is used by **IBM Product Engineering (PE)** to make:

- MOSS microcode,
- TSS microcode,
- CCU picocode, and
- CCU control code

changes to the MOSS disk.

### Conditions for Handling Microcode Patches

- MOSS must not be ONLINE.
- The function must have been requested in maintenance mode (maintenance password entered on **Password** panel, or MOSS CE switch 3 On).

Figure 7-1 on page 7-2 shows the function and data flow in patch management.

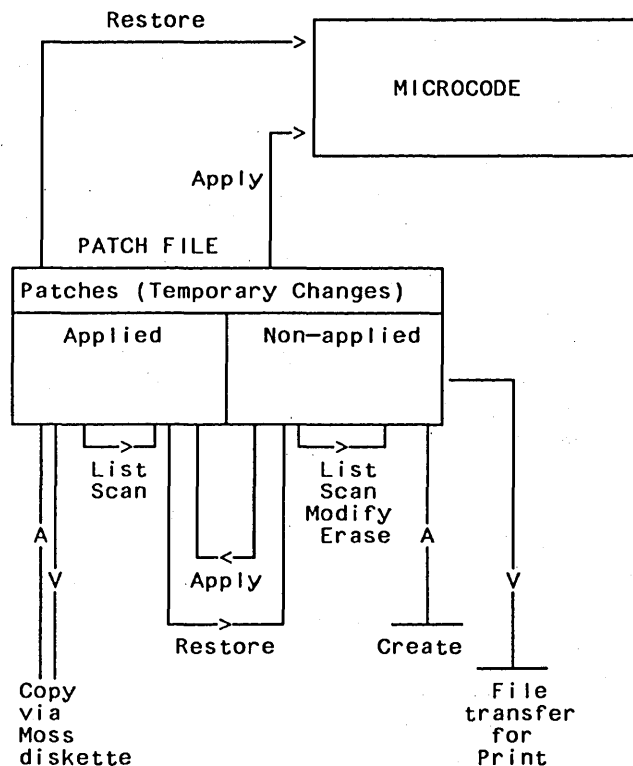


Figure 7-1. Microcode Patch Flow

## Patch Files

Patch files are independent of MCF files.

Because of the operations that can be made on patches, there are two types of patches:

- Non-applied patches

That is, patches that you can:

- Apply
- List
- Scan (display the contents)
- Modify
- Erase

- Applied patches

That is, patches that you can:

- List
- Scan (display the contents)
- Restore, but not erase

## New Patches

There are two ways of installing a new patch:

- Create a patch manually (see "Creating a Patch" on page 7-6).
- Copy a patch that has been created for another 3720, using the MOSS diskette as a transfer means from one 3720 to the other (see "Copying Microcode Patches from a Diskette Onto MOSS Disk" on page 7-24).

## Patch File Organization

The file for the management of the patches is in the PRIMARY diskette space. (This is to permit the patch of the primary diskette in degraded mode.)

The name of the local patch file is *CHGPATCH*.

The size of CHGPATCH is 25 sectors (to have 64 patches changing 36 bytes each).

---

## Accessing the Patch Management Function

You must first display the **(service) 3720 function menu** panel (first panel displayed after you entered the maintenance password on the **Password** panel, or when you use the MOSS CE switch 3).

- Type **MCF** (for MCF/Patch) in the **S/A**, then press **SEND**.

The **MCF/patch selection** panel will be displayed (see Figure 7-2).

**Note:** The MCF management function is not available when the IML is made from diskette.

```
----- MAINTENANCE MODE -----  
FUNCTION ON SCREEN: MICROCODE FIXES  
  
- SELECT FUNCTION  1 OR 2  ==>  
  
    1 = MCF MANAGEMENT  
      (UPGRADE OR RESTORE CODE, LIST, HISTORY TABLE)  
  
    2 = PATCH MANAGEMENT  
  
    EC LEVEL = 1234567
```

Figure 7-2. MCF/Patch Selection Panel

The **EC LEVEL** is the base MOSS level onto which MCFs and patches are applied.

From the **MCF/patch selection** panel:

- Type **2** (for patch) next to **SELECT A FUNCTION**, then press **SEND**.

The **patch function selection** panel will be displayed (see Figure 7-3 on page 7-5).

**Note:** If you are in **diskette mode**, you are immediately presented with the **patch** menu.

From this panel you select to:

- Create a patch; see page 7-6
- Apply patches; see page 7-11
- Scan (display the contents) of a patch; see page 7-16
- Modify the contents of a non-applied patch; see page 7-18
- Erase the contents of a non-applied patch; see page 7-14
- Restore applied patches; see page 7-20
- Copy patches onto MOSS diskette; see page 7-22
- Copy patches from MOSS diskette; see page 7-24

**Warning:** The patch management is not available in customer mode.



- SELECT ONE OPTION (1 TO 5) ==>

1 = CREATE A PATCH

2 = APPLY, ERASE, MODIFY, OR SCAN NON-APPLIED PATCHES

3 = RESTORE, SCAN APPLIED PATCHES

4 = COPY PATCHES ON MOSS DISKETTE

5 = COPY PATCHES FROM MOSS DISKETTE

Figure 7-3. Patch Function Selection Panel

## Creating a Patch

A patch is normally created by product engineers (PE); nevertheless a customer engineer (CE) could physically create a patch provided all elements are given to him (manual copy):

- File name
- Module name
- Address
- Verify data
- Replace data
- Checksum

### Procedure

- Type **1** on the selection line of the **patch function selection** panel (see Figure 7-3 on page 7-5), then press **SEND**.

The **patch creation header** panel will be displayed (see Figure 7-4).

```
- ENTER PATCH ID (1 TO 8 CHARACTERS) ==> PATCH.ID
- DESCRIBE THE PATCH (60 CHARACTERS MAX)
  ==> THIS IS A TYPICAL PATCH

PF6=QUIT
ENTER PATCH IDENTIFICATION
```

Figure 7-4. Patch Creation Header Panel

On the **patch creation header** panel:

- Type the patch identifier.
- Type a short description of the patch.
- Press **SEND**.

The **patch creation record** panel will be displayed (see Figure 7-5).

```
ID: PATCH.ID                                RECORD: 01
- FILE NAME    ==> CHGUCMOD
- MODULE NAME  ==> CHGMOSS

- ADDRESS      ==> 3C4

- VERIFY DATA ==> FFFF FFFF FFFF FFFF FFFF ....
- REPLACE DATA ==> 345D 6E7A 223B BC54 A3A3 ....
  2
PF6=QUIT PF7=CHANGE IDENTIFIER
```

Figure 7-5. Patch Creation Record Panel Sample

On the **patch creation record** panel:

- Type the file name.
- Type the module name.

- Type the starting address of the data.
- Type the verify data (that is, the data that currently exists at the address selected).
- Type the replace data (that is, the new data that is going to replace the data currently existing).
- Press *SEND*.

A new **patch creation record** panel will be displayed (see Figure 7-5 on page 7-6), with the record number increased by one.

### Checks Performed

A message will be issued if one of the following occurs:

- File name unknown
- No such module in the file
- Address outside module limits
- Verify data different from current data
- Length of verify data and replace data are different

You may also return to the **patch creation header** panel to modify the patch identification or the patch description by pressing *PF7*.

## Filing a Patch

When you have entered all records for the patch (record  $n + 1$  is displayed):

1. Press **PF7** to return to previous record (which becomes the **LAST RECORD** of the patch).
2. Press **PF5** to file the patch.

**Note:** You can also at this time modify, delete, or insert patch records.

If you are in PE mode, the patch is filed and the **patch function selection** panel is displayed (see Figure 7-3 on page 7-5). The computed checksum is displayed on this panel in the message line.

If you are **NOT** in PE mode, the **enter checksum** panel will be displayed (see Figure 7-7). You will have to:

1. Type the checksum on that panel, then press **SEND** to file the patch.
2. If you do not have the checksum, file the patch with **INCORRECT CHECKSUM**, pressing **PF5**.

You cannot apply this patch, but you may now try to get the correct checksum and then modify the patch.

```
ID: PATCH.ID                                LAST RECORD: nn
- FILE NAME    ==> CHGUCMOD
- MODULE NAME  ==> CHGMOSS

- ADDRESS      ==> 3C4

- VERIFY DATA ==> FFFF FFFF FFFF FFFF FFFF ....
- REPLACE DATA ==> 345D 6E7A 223B BC54 A3A3 ....

- AVAILABLE COMMANDS: A=ALTER, D=DELETE, I=INSERT ==>

PF5=FILE  PF6=QUIT  PF7=PREVIOUS RECORD  PF8=NEXT RECORD
```

Figure 7-6. Patch Creation Last Record Panel

```
PATCH.ID

- ENTER CHECKSUM (4 CHARACTERS) ==>

PF4=CHECK MCF  PF5=FILE WITH "INCORRECT CHECKSUM" STATUS
```

Figure 7-7. Patch Management Checksum Panel

## Listing of Patches

Because different commands may be used on them, patches have been split into two groups:

- Non-applied patches
- Applied patches

### Listing of Non-applied Patches

1. Type 2 on the selection line of the **patch function selection** panel (see Figure 7-3 on page 7-5).
2. Press **SEND**.

The **non-applied patch list** panel will be displayed (see Figure 7-8).

From this panel, you may:

- Apply patches; see page 7-11
- Scan (display the contents) of a patch; see page 7-16
- Modify a patch; see page 7-18
- Erase a patch; see page 7-14

```
IDENTIFIER          NON-APPLIED PATCHES      SCREEN 1/4
PATCH2  * ==> BBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBB
PATCH3   ==> CCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCC
PATCH5   ==> EEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEE
PATCH6  * ==> FFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF
PATCH7   ==> GGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGG
PATCH8   ==> HHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHH
PATCH11  ==> KKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKK
PATCH13  ==> MMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMM
(* = PATCH CANNOT BE APPLIED : INCORRECT CHECKSUM)
- ENTER COMMAND FOR ID: A=APPLY, E=ERASE, M=MODIFY, S=SCAN

PF5=BOTTOM      PF6=QUIT      PF8=FORWARD
```

Figure 7-8. Non-Applied Patch List Panel

### Listing of Applied Patches

- Type 3 on the selection line of the **patch function selection** panel (see Figure 7-3 on page 7-5), then press **SEND**.

The **applied patch list** panel will be displayed (see Figure 7-9 on page 7-10).

From this panel, you may:

- Scan (display the contents) of a patch; see page 7-16
- Restore a patch; see page 7-20

IDENTIFIER	APPLIED PATCHES	SCREEN 1/ 4
PATCH2	==> BBBB	
PATCH3	==> CCCCCC	
PATCH5	==> EEEEEEE	
PATCH6	==> FFFFFFF	
PATCH7	==> GGGGGG	
PATCH8	==> HHHHHH	
PATCH11	==> KKKKKK	
PATCH13	==> MMMMMM	
- ENTER A COMMAND AGAINST IDENTIFIER: R=RESTORE, S=SCAN		
PF5=BOTTOM PF6=QUIT PF8=FORWARD		

Figure 7-9. Applied Patch List Panel

## Applying a Patch

The procedures that are used to apply patches will start by a list of the patches (up to 8 patches per panel), as explained in "Listing of Patches" on page 7-9.

The **non-applied patch list** panel is displayed (see Figure 7-8 on page 7-9),

### Procedure

1. Type **A** next to the identifier(s) of the patch(es) you wish to apply (see example in Figure 7-10).
2. Press **SEND**.

After applying all the patches, a **patch apply completed** panel will be displayed (see example in Figure 7-11 on page 7-12).

Press **SEND** to display the **non-applied patch list** panel.

#### Notes:

1. The apply command could be used for several lines on **one** panel.
2. The patches applied disappear from the panel.
3. The *verify data* is checked again for validity.
4. A patch with a bad checksum **cannot** be applied.
5. A MOSS IML is required to make the patch effective.

IDENTIFIER		NON-APPLIED PATCHES	SCREEN 1/ 4
PATCH2	* ==> A	BB	
PATCH3	==>	CC	
PATCH5	==> A	EE	
PATCH6	* ==> A	FF	
PATCH7	==>	GG	
PATCH8	==> A	HH	
PATCH11	==> A	KK	
PATCH13	==> A	MM	
(* = PATCH CANNOT BE APPLIED : INCORRECT CHECKSUM)			
- ENTER COMMAND FOR ID: A=APPLY, E=ERASE, M=MODIFY, S=SCAN			
PF5=BOTTOM PF6=QUIT PF8=FORWARD			

Figure 7-10. Selection of Patches to Be Applied (Sample)

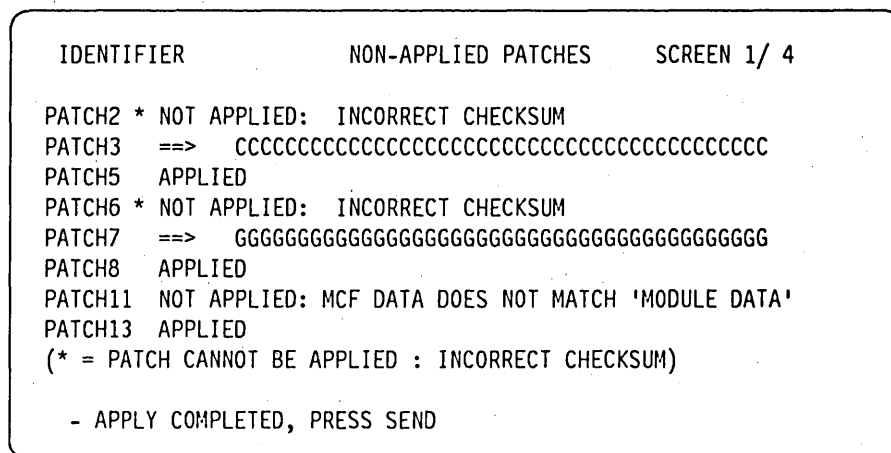


Figure 7-11. Patch Apply Completed Panel (Sample)

## Disk Error While a Patch Is Being Applied.

If a disk error occurs during an apply, the *Patch management* function is canceled, and the patch in error is marked for later recovery, as shown in Figure 7-12.

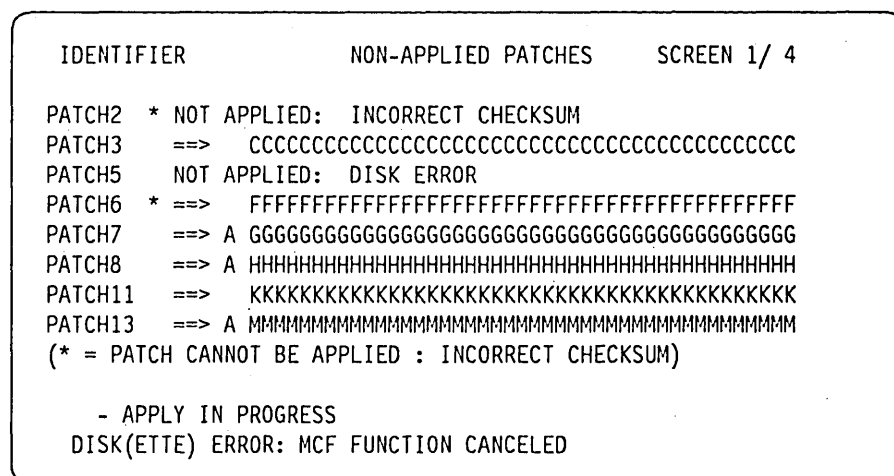


Figure 7-12. Patch Apply Disk Error Panel (Sample)

## Disk Error Recovery

Once the disk error has been corrected, request the patch management function again:

1. The failing patch will be applied again.
2. The **patch recovery** panel will be displayed for a termination request (see Figure 7-13 on page 7-13).



IDENTIFIER	NON-APPLIED PATCHES	SCREEN 1/4
PATCH5	APPLIED	
<p>- APPLY COMPLETED, PRESS SEND RECOVERY OF A CANCELED APPLY</p>		

Figure 7-13. Patch Apply Recovery Panel (Sample)

# Erasing a Patch

The procedures that are used to erase patches will start by a list of the patches (up to 8 patches per panel), as explained in "Listing of Patches" on page 7-9.

The **non-applied patch list** panel is displayed (see Figure 7-8 on page 7-9).

## Procedure

- 1. Type *E* next to the identifier(s) of the patch(es) you wish to erase (see example in Figure 7-14).
- 2. Press *SEND*.

A *confirmation* (Y/N) will be requested for each patch you wish to erase (see example in Figure 7-15 on page 7-15).

### Notes:

- 1. The erase command could be used for several lines on **one** panel.
- 2. The patches to be erased are marked.
- 3. When you press *SEND*, all patches marked are erased and disappear from the list displayed.

IDENTIFIER		NON-APPLIED PATCHES	SCREEN 1/ 4
PATCH2	* ==>	E BBBB	
PATCH3	==>	CCCC	
PATCH5	==>	E EEEEE	
PATCH6	* ==>	E FFFFF	
PATCH7	==>	GGGG	
PATCH8	==>	E HHHHH	
PATCH11	==>	KKKK	
PATCH13	==>	E MMMMM	
(* = PATCH CANNOT BE APPLIED : INCORRECT CHECKSUM)			
- ENTER COMMAND FOR ID: A=APPLY, E=ERASE, M=MODIFY, S=SCAN			
PF5=BOTTOM		PF6=QUIT	PF8=FORWARD

Figure 7-14. Selection of Patches to Be Erased (Sample)

SCREEN 1/ 4

**Figure 7-15. Patch Erase Confirmation Panel (Sample)**

## Scanning a Patch

The procedures that are used to scan a patch (display its contents) will start by a list of the patches (up to 8 patches per panel), as explained in "Listing of Patches" on page 7-9.

The **non-applied patch list** panel or the **applied patch list** panel is displayed (see Figure 7-8 on page 7-9 and Figure 7-9 on page 7-10),

### Procedure

1. Type **S** next to the identifier of the patch you wish to scan (see example in Figure 7-16).

**Note:** The example shows a *non-applied* patch panel, but the procedure is identical with an *applied* patch panel.

2. Press **SEND**.

A **patch scan** panel will be displayed with a display of the first record of the patch selected (see example in Figure 7-17 on page 7-17)

To display the other records, use the PF keys (**PF8** for next record, and **PF7** for previous record).

#### Notes:

1. The scan command can be used for **one** patch only.
2. The patch contents **cannot** be modified when using the scan command.

IDENTIFIER		NON-APPLIED PATCHES	SCREEN 1/ 4
PATCH2	* ==>	BB	
PATCH3	==>	CC	
PATCH5	==>	EE	
PATCH6	==> S	FF	
PATCH7	==>	GG	
PATCH8	==>	HH	
PATCH11	==>	KK	
PATCH13	==>	MM	
(* = PATCH CANNOT BE APPLIED : INCORRECT CHECKSUM)			
- ENTER COMMAND FOR ID: A=APPLY, E=ERASE, M=MODIFY, S=SCAN			
PF5=BOTTOM		PF6=QUIT	PF8=FORWARD

Figure 7-16. Selection of the Patch to Be Scanned (Sample)

ID: PATCH5	RECORD: 01
- FILE NAME ==> CHGUCMOD	
- MODULE NAME ==> 6PRIM	
- ADDRESS ==> 234	
- VERIFY DATA ==> 1111 2222 3333 4444 5555 .... .... ....	
- REPLACE DATA ==> 5555 4444 3333 2222 1111 .... .... ....	
PF6=QUIT	PF8=NEXT RECORD

Figure 7-17. Patch Scan Display Panel (Sample)

# Modifying a Patch

The procedures that are used to modify a patch will start by a list of the patches (up to 8 patches per panel), as explained in "Listing of Patches" on page 7-9.

The **non-applied patch list** panel is displayed (see Figure 7-8 on page 7-9).

## Procedure

- 1. Type *M* next to the identifier of the patch you wish to modify (see example in Figure 7-18).
- 2. Press *SEND*.

A **patch modify** panel will be displayed with a display of the first record of the patch selected (see example in Figure 7-19 on page 7-19).

To display the other records, use the PF keys (*PF8* for next record, and *PF7* for previous record).

### Notes:

- 1. The modify command can be used for **one** patch only.
- 2. Everything may be modified in the patch (identification, description, and record contents).

## Modification Procedure

Use the same procedure as when creating a patch. See "Creating a Patch" on page 7-6.

IDENTIFIER		NON-APPLIED PATCHES	SCREEN 1/ 4
PATCH2	* ==>	BB	
PATCH3	==>	CC	
PATCH5	==>	EE	
PATCH6	==> M	FF	
PATCH7	==>	GGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGG	
PATCH8	==>	HHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHHH	
PATCH11	==>	KKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKK	
PATCH13	==>	MM	
(* = PATCH CANNOT BE APPLIED : INCORRECT CHECKSUM)			
- ENTER COMMAND FOR ID: A=APPLY, E=ERASE, M=MODIFY, S=SCAN			
PF5=BOTTOM		PF6=QUIT	PF8=FORWARD

Figure 7-18. Selection of the Patch to Be Modified (Sample)

IDENTIFIER	NON-APPLIED PATCHES	SCREEN 1/ 4
ID: PATCH6		RECORD: 01
- FILE NAME	==> CHGUCMOD	
- MODULE NAME	==> 6PRIM	
- ADDRESS	==> 234	
- VERIFY DATA	==> 1111 2222 3333 4444 5555 ....	
- REPLACE DATA	==> 5555 4444 3333 2222 1111 ....	
- AVAILABLE COMMANDS:	A=ALTER, D=DELETE, I=INSERT ==>	
PF5=FILE PF6=QUIT PF7=CHANGE IDENTIFIER PF8=NEXT RECORD		

Figure 7-19. Patch Modify Execution Panel (Sample)

# Restoring Applied Patches

The procedure that is used to restore patches will start by a list of the applied patches (up to 8 patches per panel), as explained in "Listing of Patches" on page 7-9.

The **applied patch list** panel is displayed (see Figure 7-9 on page 7-10).

## Restore Patch Function

This function is the opposite to the apply function. It will *undo* the microcode modification requested by the patch applied (that is, restore to the previous code).

**Note:** At the end of the restore function, you will go directly to the **non-applied patch list** panel, by pressing *SEND*. The patch(es) you just restored will be displayed on that panel, for you to modify, scan, or erase.

## Procedure

- 1. Type *R* next to the identifier(s) of the patch(es) you wish to restore (see example in Figure 7-20).
- 2. Press *SEND*.

A **patch restore execution** panel will be displayed (see example in Figure 7-21 on page 7-21):

Press *SEND* to switch to non-applied patch management.

### Notes:

- 1. The restore command could be used for several lines on **one** panel.
- 2. The patches selected are marked *RESTORED*, they are deleted from the applied patch file, and written onto the non-applied patch file.

IDENTIFIER		APPLIED PATCHES	SCREEN 1/ 4
PATCH2	==> R	BB	
PATCH3	==>	CC	
PATCH5	==> R	EE	
PATCH6	==> R	FF	
PATCH7	==>	GG	
PATCH8	==> R	HH	
PATCH11	==>	KK	
PATCH13	==> R	MM	
- ENTER COMMAND FOR IDENTIFIER: R=RESTORE, S=SCAN			
PF5=BOT TOM		PF6=QUIT	PF8=FORWARD

Figure 7-20. Selection of Patches to be Restored (Sample)



```

IDENTIFIER                                APPLIED PATCHES          SCREEN 1/4

PATCH2      RESTORED
PATCH3      ==>  CCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCCC
PATCH5      RESTORED
PATCH6      RESTORED
PATCH7      ==>  GGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGGG
PATCH8      RESTORED
PATCH11     ==>  KKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKKK
PATCH13     RESTORED
- RESTORE COMPLETED, PRESS SEND FOR NON-APPLIED PATCH MNGMT

```

---

## Copying Microcode Patches Onto MOSS Diskette

This function permits collecting the patches developed on a 3720, and transferring and installing them onto another 3720.

**Warning:** *TERMINATION* is not allowed during a copy function.

### Copy Onto MOSS Diskette Procedure

1. Type 4 on the selection line of the **patch function selection** panel (see Figure 7-3 on page 7-5).
2. Press *SEND*.

A message is displayed that asks you to mount the primary diskette onto which patches are to be copied.

After this diskette has been mounted, and *SEND* pressed, the **patch copy to diskette selection** panel will be displayed (see Figure 7-22 on page 7-23).

This list contains only the patches that are on MOSS disk but not on MOSS diskette.

### Procedure

1. Type C next to the identifier(s) of the patch(es) you wish to copy onto MOSS diskette (see example in Figure 7-22 on page 7-23).

**Note:** At that time the selected patches are copied in the storage area reserved for the destination diskette.

2. Press *SEND* after execution of the copy.

The next panel with patches to be copied is displayed.

3. Do all previous steps for all panels that contain patches to be copied. Use *PF8* (forward) and *PF7* (backward) to scroll through the list.
4. Press *PF6* (QUIT) to make the copy effective (see example in Figure 7-23 on page 7-23).

**Note:** At that time the selected patches are copied from the storage area onto the destination diskette.

After the transfer, the following message is displayed:

SELECTED PATCH COPIED ON DISK(ETTE)

### IML from Diskette

If the IML was done from a diskette, the following panel will be displayed.

MOUNT SOURCE PRIMARY DISKETTE, THEN PRESS SEND.

SELECTED PATCHES, IF ANY, COPIED ON DISK(ETTE)

Once you press *SEND*, the selected patches are copied from the storage onto the destination diskette.

IDENTIFIER		COPY ON MOSS DISKETTE	SCREEN 1/4
PATCH2	* ==>	BB	
PATCH3	==> C	CC	
PATCH5	* ==>	EE	
PATCH6	==> C	FF	
PATCH7	==> C	GG	
PATCH8	==>	HH	
PATCH11	==>	KK	
PATCH13	==>	MM	

(\* = PATCH WITH INCORRECT CHECKSUM)

- ENTER C TO SELECT PATCHES TO BE COPIED

- PRESS PF6=QUIT TO MAKE EFFECTIVE THE COPY

PF5=BOTTOM PF6=QUIT PF8=FORWARD

Figure 7-22. Patch Copy to MOSS Diskette Selection Panel

IDENTIFIER		COPY ON MOSS DISKETTE	SCREEN 1/4
PATCH2	* ==>	BB	
PATCH3		SELECTED TO BE COPIED	
PATCH5	* ==>	EE	
PATCH6		SELECTED TO BE COPIED	
PATCH7		SELECTED TO BE COPIED	
PATCH8	==>	HH	
PATCH11	==>	KK	
PATCH13	==>	MM	

(\* = PATCH WITH INCORRECT CHECKSUM)

- SELECTION COMPLETED, PRESS SEND

Figure 7-23. Patch Copy to MOSS Diskette Execution Panel

---

## Copying Microcode Patches from a Diskette Onto MOSS Disk

This function permits to collecting the patches developed on a another 3720, and installing them onto this 3720.

### Warning:

*TERMINATION* is not allowed during a copy function.

### Copy Onto MOSS Disk Procedure.

1. Type 5 on the selection line of the **patch function selection** panel (see Figure 7-3 on page 7-5).
2. Press *SEND*.

A message is displayed that asks you to mount the source diskette from which patches are to be copied.

After this diskette has been mounted, and *SEND* pressed, the **patch copy from diskette selection** panel will be displayed (see Figure 7-24 on page 7-25).

This list contains only the patches that are on the source diskette, but not on MOSS disk.

This function also allows you to scan a patch (display its contents) before copying it. "Scanning a Patch" on page 7-16 explains the procedure used.

### Procedure

1. Type *C* (for copy) next to the identifier(s) of the patch(es) you wish to copy onto MOSS disk (see example in Figure 7-24 on page 7-25).

**Note:** At that time the selected patches are copied in the storage area reserved for the disk.

2. Press *SEND* after execution of the copy.

The next panel with patches to be copied is displayed.

3. Do all previous steps for all panels that contain patches to be copied. Use *PF8* (forward) and *PF7* (backward) to scroll through the list.
4. Press *PF6* (QUIT) to make the copy effective (see example in Figure 7-25 on page 7-25).

**Note:** At that time the selected patches are copied from the storage area onto the MOSS disk.

After the transfer, the following message is displayed:

SELECTED PATCH COPIED ON DISK(ETTE)

### IML from Diskette

If the IML was done from a diskette, the following panel will be displayed.

MOUNT DESTINATION PRIMARY DISKETTE, THEN PRESS *SEND*.

Once you press *SEND*, the selected patches are copied from the storage to the diskette.

IDENTIFIER	COPY FROM MOSS DISKETTE	SCREEN 1/4
PATCH2	* ==> BBBB	
PATCH3	==> C CCCCC	
PATCH5	* ==> EEEEE	
PATCH6	==> C FFFFF	
PATCH7	==> C GGGGG	
PATCH8	==> HHHHH	
PATCH11	==> KKKKK	
PATCH13	==> MMMMM	

(\* = PATCH WITH INCORRECT CHECKSUM)

- ENTER C TO SELECT PATCHES TO BE COPIED, OR S TO SCAN

- PRESS PF6=QUIT TO MAKE EFFECTIVE THE COPY

PF5=BOTTON PF6=QUIT PF8=FORWARD

Figure 7-24. Patch Copy from MOSS Diskette Selection Panel

IDENTIFIER	COPY FROM MOSS DISKETTE	SCREEN 1/4
PATCH2	* ==> BBBB	
PATCH3	SELECTED TO BE COPIED, OR S TO SCAN	
PATCH5	* ==> EEEEE	
PATCH6	SELECTED TO BE COPIED, OR S TO SCAN	
PATCH7	SELECTED TO BE COPIED, OR S TO SCAN	
PATCH8	==> HHHHH	
PATCH11	==> KKKKK	
PATCH13	==> MMMMM	

(\* = PATCH WITH INCORRECT CHECKSUM)

- SELECTION COMPLETED, PRESS SEND

Figure 7-25. Patch Copy from MOSS Diskette Execution Panel

---

## Installing a Patch

This section describes the complete sequence of actions that are required when installing a new patch; that is, the complete sequence from the time the patch is available (external diskette, paper information, or data already transmitted onto the MOSS disk) to the moment where the updated microcode is running.

There are several ways to get a patch:

- You have created patch(es) (using the procedure described in "Creating a Patch" on page 7-6).
- You have copied patches from MOSS disk to a MOSS diskette and you have this diskette.

These patches, when applied, will modify temporarily the 3720 microcode to correct an error or bypass a suspected area.

### Patch Installation Procedure

When applying patches, the following sequence should be followed:

1. **The IML must be made from disk** and the rotary switch must be in *NORMAL* mode.
2. Enter the maintenance password on the **Password** panel or use MOSS CE switch 3.  
The **3720 function menu** panel is displayed.
3. Select the *patch* function on that panel:
  - Type *MCF* (for Microcode fix) in the *S/A*, then press *SEND*.  
The **MCF/patch function selection** panel will be displayed.
4. Transfer the patches to the MOSS disk, if they are not there already (see "Copying Microcode Patches from a Diskette Onto MOSS Disk" on page 7-24).
5. Apply the patches that are on the MOSS disk (see "Applying a Patch" on page 7-11).
6. Terminate the patch function.
7. Set the *FUNCTION SELECT* switch to *NORMAL*.
8. IML from Disk.

The storage now contains the updated version of the microcode.

---

## Chapter 8. Configuration Data File (CDF)

This function allows you to create, display, and modify the configuration data file (CDF), located on the disk. The CDF contains the hardware description of the 3720, and is used by the diagnostics and at 3720 initialization time.

The CDF functions and panels are split in two:

- Functions and panels that are available in *customer mode*, that is, the customer password has been entered on the **Password** panel.

These functions and panels are briefly explained in "Customer CDF" on page 8-16 in this manual, but the *3720 Extended Services* manual gives all details in its 'CDF' chapter.

**Note:** The speed of direct-attached lines may be displayed (and modified) using the *customer CDF function*, see page 8-16.

- Functions and panels that are available in *service mode*, that is, the service (maintenance) password has been entered on the **Password** panel, or the *MOSS CE switch 3* was On.

These functions are explained in detail in this chapter.

## CDF Functions in Service Mode

- Type *CDF* (for CONF DATA FILE) in the *S/A* of the **3720 function menu** panel, then press *SEND*.

The **(service) CDF function selection** panel is displayed (see Figure 8-1).

From this panel you may:

1. Create a new CDF by typing *1* and pressing *SEND*.  
A new CDF will be created to reflect the latest hardware modifications of the 3720 (see page 8-3).
2. Upgrade a CDF (that is add elements, such as an MES to an existing configuration) by typing *2* and pressing *SEND* (see page 8-4).
3. Verify a CDF by typing *3* and pressing *SEND*.  
This function checks that the CDF is the exact image of the 3720 (see page 8-5).
4. Display or update a CDF by typing *4* and pressing *SEND* (see page 8-7).

**Note:** This function allows you to deactivate an RDV card in the CDF.

The CDF gives information on CCU, MOSS, LAB, channel adapters, scanners, TRSS, and LSSD strings.

An additional panel, referred to as **CDF display help** (see Figure 8-15 on page 8-15) and available in *CDF display* function, explains codes used in CDF panels.

```
----- MAINTENANCE MODE -----  
FUNCTION ON SCREEN: CONF DATA FILE  
  
- SELECT CDF OPTION (1, 2, 3, 4) ==>  
  
    1 = CREATE  
    2 = UPGRADE  
    3 = VERIFY  
    4 = DISPLAY/UPDATE  
  
WARNING: CREATE DESTROYS ALL MANUALLY ENTERED DATA
```

Figure 8-1. Service CDF Function Selection Panel



---

## Creating a CDF

You have typed *1* and pressed *SEND* on the (service) CDF function selection panel.

**Warning:** When you select the CDF create option, all CDF fields are reset.

The **CDF create** panel is displayed (see Figure 8-2).

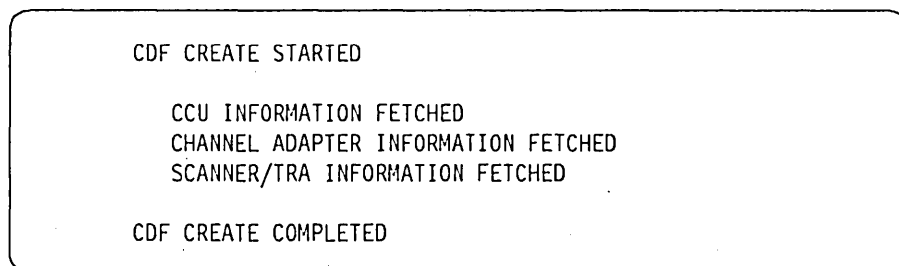
Fields that reflect the machine configuration (hardware) are reinitialized accordingly. Conversely, the fields that have been manually initialized stay DESTROYED, and have to be manually initialized again.

If necessary, the back-up diskettes, which should be at the same level, might be used to retrieve the lost information.

To create the CDF, the **MOSS must be in MOSS ALONE state** (field 'c' of the MSA).

**The creation of the CDF is automatic.**

You are informed of the CDF creation progression by the display on the **CDF create** panel (see Figure 8-2).



The image shows a rectangular panel with a black border. Inside the panel, the text is centered and reads: 'CDF CREATE STARTED' at the top, followed by three lines: 'CCU INFORMATION FETCHED', 'CHANNEL ADAPTER INFORMATION FETCHED', and 'SCANNER/TRA INFORMATION FETCHED'. At the bottom, it says 'CDF CREATE COMPLETED'.

Figure 8-2. CDF Create Panel (Sample)

The contents of the panel depend on the current machine configuration, as sensed by the CDF create program. For example, CHANNEL ADAPTER INFORMATION FETCHED will be displayed only if a channel adapter is sensed as installed.

A *CDF Create* does not initialize the channel adapter addresses (ESC Low, ESC High, NSC), but it initializes the line clocking information to the default value (external clock).

To initialize the channel adapter addresses and/or to modify the cable clocking information, the CDF must be updated *manually* using the (service) CDF *display/update function* (see page 8-7).

---

## Upgrading the CDF

This is the function you (or the customer) can use to upgrade the customer's 3720/3721 configuration.

The function is identical to CDF create, **EXCEPT THAT THE DATA ENTERED MANUALLY IS KEPT.**

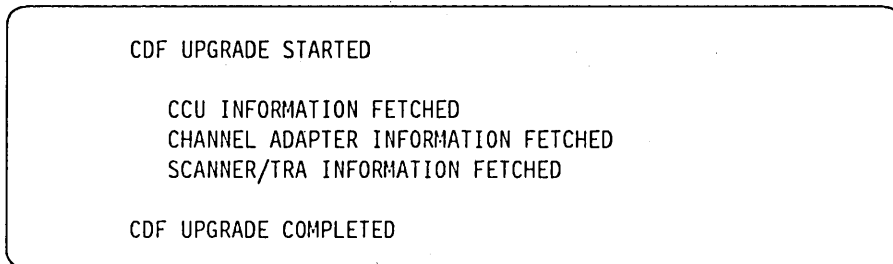
### CDF Upgrade Procedure.

You have entered 2 on the **CDF function selection** panel.

The **(service) CDF upgrade** panel is displayed.

The upgrade of the CDF is automatic.

You are informed of the CDF upgrade progression by the display on the **CDF upgrade** panel as follows:



```
CDF UPGRADE STARTED

CCU INFORMATION FETCHED
CHANNEL ADAPTER INFORMATION FETCHED
SCANNER/TRA INFORMATION FETCHED

CDF UPGRADE COMPLETED
```

Figure 8-3. CDF Upgrade Panel

The contents of the panel depend on the current machine configuration, as sensed by the CDF create program. For example, CHANNEL ADAPTER INFORMATION FETCHED will be displayed only if a channel adapter is sensed as installed.

A *CDF Upgrade* does not initialize the channel adapter addresses (ESC low, ESC high, NSC), but it initializes the line clocking information to the default value (external clock).

To initialize the channel adapter addresses and/or to modify the cable clocking information, the CDF must be updated *manually* using the *(service) CDF display/update function* (see page 8-7).

---

## Verifying the CDF

Once the 3720 is installed, you should verify that the CDF reflects exactly the hardware configuration of the 3720.

The *verify* option does not handle the cable clocking information nor the channel adapter addresses (ESCL, ESCH, NSC).

You may also verify the CDF at any other time to check whether the CDF corresponds to the actual 3720.

You have typed 3 and pressed *SEND* on **CDF function selection** panel.

The **CDF verify execution** panel is displayed (see Figure 8-4 and Figure 8-5 on page 8-6).

**The verification phase is automatic.** Once you have selected **VERIFY**, the first difference, if any, is displayed on the **CDF verification error** panel. You are requested to settle the difference by entering Y or N on the panel (see page 8-5).

### Verification Error Display

The **CDF verify execution** panel displays the value that is on the disk and the value that is sensed on the machine (see Figure 8-4).

- To modify the disk to reflect the actual machine configuration, type *Y* and press *SEND*.
- To keep the value on disk, type *N* and press *SEND*..

The next difference, if any, is displayed, and so on.

When you reach the end of the verification phase, the message **VERIFY COMPLETED** is displayed and the CDF, if updated, is automatically filed on the disk.

CDF - VERIFY OPTION IN PROGRESS

SCANNER:	01
LIC POS:	04

DIFFERENCE BETWEEN THE MACHINE AND THE DISK:

VALUE FROM THE MACHINE:	01
VALUE FROM THE DISK:	00

- TO UPDATE DISK WITH MACHINE VALUE ENTER Y ==>  
OTHERWISE ENTER N

Figure 8-4. CDF Verify Execution Panel (Sample 1)

## Field Explanation for CDF Verify Sample Panel

The item displayed varies according to the various frames displayed and the verified information. In the example in Figure 8-4 on page 8-5, there is a difference for the fourth location (out of 7) on scanner number 1.

**Note:** A machine failure may cause different values in *machine* and *disk* fields. Before updating the disk, make sure that the difference shown by the verify process is valid.

If during the verification phase, cable and/or channel adapters are modified on the disk CDF, the corresponding cable information and channel adapter addresses must be manually updated, using the CDF display/update option.

For the 3721:

- '02' means that the expansion has two scanners
- '00' means that the expansion has one scanner

## CDF Error Correction

After the preceding panel (see Figure 8-4 on page 8-5) has been displayed, and if the LIC cables are not updated, the following panel will be displayed line-by-line (see Figure 8-5).

On this panel, the cables on ports 2 and 3 are not present on the disk but exist on the machine. Their code (4) means that they are modem-attached (see "CDF Display/Update Information" on page 8-15 for details).

**Note:** The LIC position is always referenced by the physical location (1 to 8) on the board, regardless of the base type (basic board, 3721-1 expansion, or 3721-2 expansion).

CDF - VERIFY OPTION IN PROGRESS

SCANNER:	01
LIC POS:	04
CABLE ID	

DIFFERENCE BETWEEN THE MACHINE AND THE DISK:

VALUE FROM THE MACHINE:	0440
VALUE FROM THE DISK:	0000

- TO UPDATE DISK WITH MACHINE VALUE ENTER Y ==>  
OTHERWISE ENTER N

Figure 8-5. CDF Verify Panel (Sample 2)

---

## Service CDF Display/Update

You have typed 4 and pressed *SEND* on the **CDF function selection** panel.

The **CDF display selection** panel is displayed (see Figure 8-6).

From this panel you may:

- Select to display successively all components of the CDF; see page 8-8
- Select to display a single component of the CDF:
  - The CCU; see page 8-8
  - The LAB/CAB; see page 8-8
  - The channel adapters; see page 8-9
  - The scanners or TRA; see page 8-10
  - The LSSD blocks; see page 8-14
- Select to see the CDF information explanation; see 8-15

CDF - DISPLAY OPTION

- SELECT ONE DISPLAY OPTION (1 TO 7) ==>

1 = ALL (2 TO 6)  
2 = CCU  
3 = LAB/CAB  
4 = SCANNER/TRA  
5 = CHANNEL ADAPTER  
6 = LSSD  
7 = CDF INFORMATION

PF6=QUIT

Figure 8-6. CDF Display/Update Selection Panel

The contents of the panel depend on the current machine configuration, as sensed by the CDF create program. For example, 5=CHANNEL ADAPTER will be displayed only if a channel adapter is sensed as installed.

When selecting display/update, the default is display mode.

To update the CDF, press *PF4* (UPDATE). This is possible only when *PF4*=UPDATE is displayed.

You are informed that you are in update mode by the term UPDATE displayed on the first line of the work area.

The cursor is positioned at the first UPDATABLE character. Use the tab key (-->) to move from one updatable character to another. When all fields have been updated, press *SEND* to enter the data.

To file the updated CDF on the disk, press *PF8*, when this key is displayed (*PF8*=FILE).

If you select the terminate (T) function before filing the updated CDF, the modifications you entered are lost.

**Warning:** If the CDF has been changed for maintenance, it is possible that bad board swaps may be made while reloading the box after CDF maintenance. That may require changes in the CDF for rectification. Unpredictable results may occur from changes in the CDF if they affect port swapped lines.

Also if a port has been modified to say 'cable not installed' (00), make sure that the cable is unplugged, otherwise diagnostics may give false results.

## CDF Display/Update All

You select ALL to display all the CDF: CCU, MOSS, line and channel boards, channel adapters, scanners, and LSSD. To go from one panel to the following one (for example from CCU/MOSS to LAB), press *PF8* (FORWARD).

At the end of the CDF display, if an update has been performed, *PF8=FILE* is displayed. It is recommended to perform all the updates before pressing this key.

## CDF Display/Update of CCU/MOSS

CONTROLLER TYPE= 3720      MODEL: 01 (3720 Model 1)

CCU STORAGE SIZE: 1024 K

PF4=UPDATE   PF6=QUIT

Figure 8-7. CDF Display/Update CCU/MOSS Sample Panel

## Updatable Fields

The following fields may be updated (if the CCU is not initialized):

- The CCU Storage
- The Model
  - From a Model 1 to 11
  - From a Model 2 to 12
  - From a Model 11 to 1
  - From a Model 12 to 2

## CDF Display/Update LAB/CAB (3720/3721)

RDV SEQ	BOARD TYPE	RDV ADDR	1ST CA/CS # ADDR	2ND CA/CS # ADDR	LIC/LINE L1L2L3L4	INSTALLED L5L6L7L8
* 1	BASB	4000	*CS 01 10	*RA 02 48	Y N h h	h h
* 2	EXB2	4002	*CS 03 11	*CS 04 21	. . . .	. . . .
* 3	CAB	4006	*CA 01 08	*CA 02 08		

PF4=UPDATE   PF6=QUIT

Figure 8-8. CDF Display/Update LAB/CAB Sample Panel (3720/3721)

Y means TIC present (N if not present)

## Fields of CDF Display/Update Panel for LAB/CAB

Highlighting of adapter type field and '\*' means: adapter present.

RDV SEQ: Redrive number. If a redrive has been deactivated (top card connector, pin W28 to W29) and is still recorded as present (\*), delete the (\*).

**Note:** The RDV will also have to be in disconnected state to prevent failures on some IOC bus IFTs. For more information on redrive states, refer to the *3720 Maintenance Information Reference* manual.

BOARD TYPE: BASB (for 3720), EXB1 (for 3721-1), or EXB2 (for 3721-2)

RDV ADDR: Redrive address.

CA/CS # ADDR: Give the number and the address of the channel adapters (CA), communication scanners (CS), and token-ring adapter (RA).

LIC/LINE INSTALLED: See "CDF Display/Update Information" on page 8-15 for more information.

The codes under this title are interpreted as follows: L1L2L3...L8: LIC position 1 through 8.

F(hexadecimal code):  
Port number    1 2 3 4  
Line status    1 1 1 1  
Legend:  
1 means line present  
0 means line absent  
8(hexadecimal code):  
Port number    1 2 3 4  
Line status    1 0 0 0

### Notes:

1. When a LIC is absent, the hexa code is replaced by a point (.).
2. When a TRA is installed (3720 Models 11 and 12), the hexadecimal code under 'L1L2' is replaced by 'Y' for the TIC(s) installed, and by 'N' for the TIC(s) absent.

Press PF4 (UPDATE), and enter an asterisk at the left of the redrive sequence number to indicate that the redrive is present. No asterisk means not present.

## CDF Display/Update of Channel Adapters

CHANNEL ADAPTER							
CA #	RDV ADDR	CAB TYPE	TPS	NSC ADDRESSES		ESC ADDRESSES	
				A	B	LOW	HIGH
* 1	4006	CAB	Y	00	00	00	00
* 2	4006	CAB	Y	00	00	00	00
PF4=UPDATE PF6=QUIT							

Figure 8-9. CDF Display/Update Channel Adapters Sample Panel

The \* means present

CA #: Channel adapter number. The \* indicates that the channel adapter is present. You can update (delete or insert) this character. For example, you can delete the \* to temporarily remove a CA during diagnostic tests.

RDV ADDR: Redrive address.

CAB TYPE Board type: CAB

TPS: Two processor switch.

- Y means present,
- N means not present
- - means not applicable

You can update Y and N, but not -.

NSC: Native subchannel address.

ESCL: Emulated subchannel address low (ESC lo)

ESCH: Emulated subchannel address high (ESC hi)

For ESC and NSC address jumpering on cards CADR and CHIN, refer to the *3720 Maintenance Information Reference* manual. These addresses have to be entered manually.

## CDF Display/Update of Scanners or TRA

If you requested a display/update of the scanners or TRA (**only**), you are requested to enter the scanner/TRA number:

- ENTER SCANNER/TRA NUMBER (0 FOR ALL) ==>

The scanner number is 1, 3, or 4; the TRA number is 2; enter 0 for all scanners.

If you have selected to display or update **ALL**, and if you pressed *PF8* (forward), in the **CDF display/Update LAB/CAB** panel, you are presented with the display of the first scanner (basic board).

Pressing *PF8* will display the other scanner(s) (if a 3721-1 or a 3721-2 is installed), or display the TRA contents (if a 3720-11 or a 3720-12 is installed).

One of the following panels is then displayed:

SCANNER:	1	ADDR:	10	ICC-1:	1	LAB:	A
CS:	0	RDV:	4000	ICC-2:	1	FES:	0
LIC POS:	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
LIC TYPE=	01	01	01	01	01	01	01
CLOCK (C) AND CABLE ID INFO (I)							
	C	I	C	I	C	I	C
PORT 1:	2	4	2	4	2	4	2
PORT 2:	2	4	2	4	2	4	2
PORT 3:	2	4	2	4	2	4	2
PORT 4:	2	4	2	4	2	4	2
PF4=UPDATE		PF6=QUIT		<PF8=FORWARD>			

Figure 8-10. CDF Display/Update Scanner 1 (3720 Model 1 or 2)



```

SCANNER: 1 ADDR: 10 ICC-1: 1 LAB: C
CS: 0 RDV: 4000 ICC-2: - FES: 0

```

```

LIC POS: 3 4 5 6
LIC TYPE= 01 01 01 01

```

CLOCK (C) AND CABLE ID INFO (I)

	C	I	C	I	C	I	C	I
PORT 1:	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4
PORT 2:	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4
PORT 3:	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4
PORT 4:	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4

PF4=UPDATE PF6=QUIT <PF8=FORWARD>

Figure 8-11. CDF Display/Update Scanner 1 (3720 Model 11 and 12)

```

TRA: 2 ADDR: 48 LAB: C
TRA TYPE: 0 RDV: 4000

```

```

TIC POSITION: 1 2
INSTALLED: * *

```

(\* means present, \_ means absent)

PF4=UPDATE PF6=QUIT <PF7=BACKWARD> <PF8=FORWARD>

Figure 8-12. CDF Display/Update TRA 2 (3720 Model 11 and 12)

```

SCANNER: 3 ADDR: 11 ICC-1: 1 LAB: A
CS: 0 RDV: 4002 ICC-2: 1 FES: 0

```

```

LIC POS: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
LIC TYPE= 01 01 01 01 01 01 01 01

```

CLOCK (C) AND CABLE ID INFO (I)

	C	I	C	I	C	I	C	I	C	I	C	I	C	I
PORT 1:	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4
PORT 2:	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4
PORT 3:	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4
PORT 4:	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4	2	4

PF4=UPDATE PF6=QUIT <PF7=BACKWARD> <PF8=FORWARD>

Figure 8-13. CDF Display/Update Scanners (3721)

## Fields in CDF Display/Update Scanners

SCANNER: Gives the scanner number, the scanner address, the board type (A for 3720-1, 3720-2, and 3721-1, B for 3721-2, C for 3720-11 and 3720-12).

SCANNER: no. 1 3 4

ADDR: 10 11 21

CS: Gives the scanner presence, the redrive address, the FES and ICC presence.

1 indicates present, 0 indicates absent; (any other value indicates a possible error).

LIC POS: LIC position: 1 to 8.

LIC TYPE: LIC type for each LIC position as follows:

Value	LIC Type
00	(No LIC)
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4A
0C	4B

PORT n: Gives the clock (C) and cable (I) information for each port of a LIC, as follows:

C Clock information

- 0: Not defined clock
- 1: Business machine clock
- 2: External clock (default)
- 3: Direct attachment

I Cable information

- 0: Cable not installed
- 1: LIC type 1, 2, or 4 wrap block
- 2: LIC type 3 wrap cable
- 4: Modem attachment
- 5: Direct attachment
- 6: Autocall (See Note 1)

### Notes:

1. For autocall units, the clock must be set to 0 (not defined).
2. Place "C" and "I" information in port 1 for the first line attached to a LIC (type 3, direct attachment) even if this line physically connects to another port of the LIC.

## Updating the CDF for Scanners

If you delete a scanner or a LIC all the information for that scanner or LIC is suppressed.

The updated data is stored on the disk at the end of the application.

## PF Keys

PF7=BACKWARD and PF8=FORWARD.

This PF key information appears on the panel when it is possible to page backward or forward with the PF keys.

## Updating the CDF for the TRA

The updated data is stored on the disk at the end of the application.

A TRA takes a scanner adapter position, therefore, when a TRA is detected in lieu of a CSP, a TRA panel is displayed (see Figure 8-12 on page 8-11).

Press *PF4* (UPDATE), and enter an asterisk (\*) to indicate that the TIC is present. Blank or ( ) means not present.

**Note:** If you delete a TRA or a TIC, all the information for that TRA or that TIC is suppressed.

## Fields in CDF Display/Update TRA

TRA: Gives the TRA number (02)

ADDR: Gives the TRA address (48)

LAB: Gives the pseudo LAB type (C)

TRA Type: Gives the TRA type (0)

RDV: Gives the TRA RDV number (4000)

TIC position: 1 2 Gives the possible TIC positions

INSTALLED: Gives the TIC installed (\*) or absent ( )

## PF Keys

PF7=BACKWARD and PF8=FORWARD.

This PF key information appears on the panel when it is possible to page backward or forward with the PF keys.

## CDF Display of LSSD

The LSSD can only be displayed, **NOT UPDATED**.

For detailed information on level sensitive scan design (LSSD), and troubleshooting procedures for CCU hardchecks, see the *3720 Maintenance Information Reference* manual. Two sectors of LSSD can be displayed:

1. LSSD skeleton block sector 1: This is the LSSD saved by the MOSS during phase 1b of a controller re-IML when a CCU hardcheck occurs. If several CCU hardchecks occur, the LSSD skeleton kept corresponds to the latest hardcheck.
2. LSSD init block sector 2: This is the actual CCU value for initializing the CCU.

Before displaying LSSD, you are requested to enter the LSSD block number:

- ENTER LSSD BLOCK NUMBER (0 FOR BOTH) == >  
(enter 1 or 2, or 0 for both)

The following panel is then displayed in hexadecimal format (H):

LSSD SKELETON BLOCK				CDF SECTOR 1/2	
0	4	8	C	10	14
00 0002100D	000D000B	00000000	F8280C00	00000063	0FCF3F05
18 01F82820	00000000	0000FFFF	0001010C	000B0004	00000000
30 23BE000C	700030F9	C01C3918	E96B8021	00000003	0003010E
48 00070004	022E3007	64400010	0030B901	00000000	00000000
60 00000000	00000007	E0000000	00000000	00000000	00050207
78 0004000E	00000000	00000000	0004010B	002F0002	00000000
90 00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	02FFFFFF
A8 FFFFFFFF	FFFFFFFF	FFFF0000	00000018	400C0000	00000000
C0 10000004	00200003	01000010	20010000	80000000	00000000
D8 03F00000	00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	0007010B
F0 002F0002	FFFFF807	FFFFF2F8	00000140		
PF6=QUIT			PF8=FORWARD		

Figure 8-14. CDF Display of an LSSD Sector (Sample)

A sector is made of strings. Each string has a four-element header added that indicates:

- The string number ('0002' in the first string)
- The string Identifier ('100D' in the first string)
- The string length in halwords ('000D' in the first string)
- The number of significant bits in last halfword ('000B' in the first string).

The table below explains to what the string numbers correspond.

Number	Title	Address
0002	MSA	0
0001	PUA	24
0003	UCBA	44
0005	Redrive	74
0004	ALLPUC	84
0007	Picodiag	EC

**PF Keys** PF7=BACKWARD and PF8=FORWARD.: This PF key information appears on the panel when it is possible to page backward or forward with the PF keys.

## CDF Display/Update Information

The following panel, obtained by entering 7 followed by *SEND* in the CDF display/update selection panel, is to be used as a HELP for the CDF information:

```
CS/FES/ICC-1/ICC-2 ==> - = NOT INSTALLED
                        N = INSTALLED AND TYPE NUMBER

LIC TYPES  CLOCK INFO (C)      CABLE INFO(I)
00=NO LIC  1=INT. CLOCK        0=CABLE NOT INSTALLED
01=LIC1     2=EXT. CLOCK        1=LIC1/2/4 WRAP BLOCK
02=LIC2     (DEFAULT)           2=LIC3 WRAP CABLE
03=LIC3     3=DIRECT ATTACHMENT 4=MODEM ATTACHMENT
04=LIC4A
0C=LIC4B    5=DIRECT ATTACHMENT
                        6=AUTOCALL
-LAB/CAB=LIC/LINE POS.GIVES BINARY PORT POSITION INSIDE
  LIC (A = 1010 LINES ON PORT 1 AND 3)
-DO NOT FORGET TO ENTER NSC & ESC ADDR. IN CA SCREEN
-UPDATED INFO. IS WRITTEN ONLY AFTER "PF8=FILE" IS KEYED
  PF6=QUIT
```

Figure 8-15. CDF Display/Delete Help Panel

**Note:** See the *3720 Maintenance Information Reference* manual for register bit details about LIC types, clock, and cable information for specific LIC types.

---

## Customer CDF

You are in *customer mode* (the customer password was used to log onto MOSS).

To select the CDF function:

1. Type *CDF* (for CONF DATA FILE) in the *S/A* of the **3720 function menu** panel.
2. Press *SEND*.

The **(customer) CDF function selection** panel is displayed.

From this panel you may:

- Upgrade a CDF (that is, add elements, such as an MES, to an existing configuration) by typing *1* and pressing *SEND*.
- Display a CDF by typing *2* and pressing *SEND*, that is
  - Display the contents (LICs, TICs, lines, and channel adapters) of the 3720 basic board, and of the 3721 expansion board
  - Display and modify the line speed of some direct-attached lines (only in customer mode)

All CDF information is given the 'CDF' chapter of the *3720 Extended Services* manual.

### Display/Update Direct-Attached Line Speed

You have selected to display (and/or update) the speed of one or more direct-attached line(s) by entering *4* on the **(customer) CDF display selection** panel.

The **programmable line speed selection** panel is displayed (only in customer mode).

This CDF function allows the customer to change the speed information of direct-attached lines.

This information is maintained on the MOSS disk, and made available to the corresponding scanner when it is IML'ed (selectively or through a normal CCU IPL).

Speeds on the MOSS disk file have a default value set to 9600 bps.

### Procedure

- To **display** the line speed and LIC type assigned to a line,
  1. Type the address corresponding to that line on the **programmable line speed selection** panel.
  2. Press *SEND*.

The line speed and LIC type is then displayed on the same panel.

**Note:** To display the line speed of the next (or previous) sequential line address, press *PF8* (forward) or *PF7* (backward).

- To **update** the line speed assigned to a line, you must:
  1. Display the line speed of that line (see previous paragraph).
  2. Press *PF4* (speed update).
  3. Type the number corresponding to the speed requested (as listed on the panel, for example type *0* for 2400 bps).
  4. Press *SEND*.

The following is checked:

- The existence of the line
- Whether the line is direct-attached
- The LIC type

All Programmable-line-speed information is given in the 'PLS' chapter of the *3720 Extended Services* manual.





---

## Chapter 9. Panel Functions from MOSS Console

This chapter describes how some activities, which would normally require being at the 3720 control panel, could be performed using the MOSS console.

These activities are:

- Show the hexadecimal display, and the position of some control panel switches:
  - The **Function Select** switch
  - The **Power Control** switch (LOCAL or REMOTE)
  - The four **MOSS CE** switches (ON or OFF)

This information is displayed as soon as you request the **Control Panel Function**; see "Accessing the Panel Function" on page 9-2.

**Note:** The **Panel/Console** switch of the control panel **NEED NOT BE** on **Console**.

- Request a command that would require setting a panel switch to a given position:
  - Request a general IPL
  - Request a MOSS IML with **Reset**
  - Enable or disable the channel adapter(s)

**Note:** The *Panel/Console* switch of the control panel **MUST BE** on **console**

**Warning:** When setting the *Panel/Console* switch from **Console** to **Panel**, make sure that the channel adapter switches on the control panel correspond to the channel adapter lamps.

**User of the 3720 MOSS Panel Functions:** This *panel function from MOSS console* function is available to the customer, but some information (such as MOSS CE switch setting) is not displayed if the customer password was used in the **Password** panel.

The *3720 Extended Services* manual describes in more details the procedures required to run this function in customer mode.

## Accessing the Panel Function

You must first display the **3720 function menu** panel (first panel displayed after you entered the remote maintenance password on the **Password** panel, or with the MOSS CE switch 3 set ON).

1. Type *PAF* (for Panel Function) in the *SIA*, then press *SEND*.

Depending on the position of the **Panel/Console** switch, two types of panels may be displayed: see following sections.

### If the Panel/Console Switch is on Panel

The panel displayed will be similar to the one shown in Figure 9-1.

The following control panel information is displayed:

- The value of the hexadecimal display (if it has a meaning).
- The position of the **Function Select** switch.
- The position of the **Power Control** switch (for the local 3720, Model 1 and 11)
- The state of the channel adapters (for the 3720 Models 1 and 11 only):
  - The CAs that are installed.
  - The state of the channel adapter lamps (current state).
  - The state of the channel adapter switches (requested state).
  - The position of MOSS CE switches (only in maintenance mode).

The display is in *refresh* mode; that is, all changes to the control panel are automatically displayed on the console panel. This is the default mode.

To stop the *refresh*, press *BREAK* (ATTN).

To restart the *refresh*, press *PF5*.

CUSTOMER ID: .....3720-1SERIAL NUMBER: xxxxxx

----- MAINTENANCE MODE -----

FUNCTION ON SCREEN: PANEL FUNCTIONS

SYSTEM INPUT AREA (SIA) ==>

T:TERMINATE OFF: LOGOFF PF1: MOVE TO SIA PF2: CCU FNCTN PF3: ALARM

INFORMATION FROM THE CONTROL PANEL

HEX DISPLAY:FEF

FUNCTION SELECT SWITCH:NORMAL

POWER CONTROL SWITCH:LOCAL

CE SWITCHES:ON OFF ON OFF

INSTALLED CA:1 2 3

CA STATE:E D E

REQUESTED CA STATEE E E

(E=ENABLED D=DISABLED)

- TO HAVE ACCESS TO THE PANEL FUNCTIONS:

1. GO TO THE CONTROL PANEL

2. SET PANEL/CONSOLE SWITCH TO CONSOLE

OR

- PRESS BREAK TO STOP REFRESH

Figure 9-1. Control Panel Display (Switch Set to Panel)

## If the Panel/Console Switch is on Console

The panel displayed will be similar to the one shown in Figure 9-2.

The following control panel information is displayed:

- The value of the hexadecimal display (if it has a meaning).
- The position of the **Function Select** switch.
- The position of the **Power Control** switch (for the local 3720, Models 1 and 11).
- The state of the channel adapters (for the 3720 Models 1 and 11 only):
  - The CAs that are installed.
  - The state of the channel adapter lamps (current state).
  - The state of the channel adapter switches (requested state).

CA numbering:

CA 1 on screen is: CA 1, interface 1 (1A on control panel).  
CA 2 on screen is: CA 1, interface 2 (1B on control panel).  
CA 3 on screen is: CA 2, interface 1 (2A on control panel).  
CA 4 on screen is: CA 2, interface 2 (2B on control panel).

- The position of MOSS CE switches (only in maintenance mode).

The display is in *refresh* mode; that is, all changes to the control panel are automatically displayed on the console panel. This is the default mode.

To stop the *refresh* and request a panel function such as a change in CA switch state, press *BREAK* (ATTN).

To restart the *refresh*, press *PF5*.

FUNCTION ON SCREEN: PANEL FUNCTIONS

SYSTEM INPUT AREA (SIA) ==>

T:TERMINATE OFF: LOGOFF PF1: MOVE TO SIA PF2: CCU FNCTN PF3: ALARM

INFORMATION FROM THE CONTROL PANEL

HEX DISPLAY:	FEF	INSTALLED CA:	1 2 3
FUNCTION SELECT SWITCH:	NORMAL	CA STATE:	E D E
POWER CONTROL SWITCH:	LOCAL	REQUESTED CA STATE	E E E
CE SWITCHES:	ON OFF ON OFF	(E=ENABLED D=DISABLED)	

- PRESS BREAK TO SELECT A PANEL FUNCTION AND STOP REFRESH

Figure 9-2. Control Panel Display (Switch Set to Console)

## Using Control Panel Functions from Console

From the **control panel function selection** panel (see page 9-4), you may select to:

- Request a general IPL or a MOSS IML with RESET, see page 9-5.
- Enable or disable the channel adapter(s), see page 9-4.

```
FUNCTION ON SCREEN: MCF PANEL FUNCTIONS

SYSTEM INPUT AREA (SIA) ==>
T:TERMINATE  OFF: LOGOFF  PF1: MOVE TO SIA  PF2: CCU FNCTN  PF3: ALARM

INFORMATION FROM THE CONTROL PANEL

HEX DISPLAY:          FEF          INSTALLED CA:          1 2 3
FUNCTION SELECT SWITCH:  NORMAL      CA STATE:              E D E
POWER CONTROL SWITCH:   LOCAL        REQUESTED CA STATE  E E E
CE SWITCHES:            ON OFF ON  OFF  (E=ENABLED D=DISABLED)

- SELECT A PANEL FUNCTION(IPL, IML, CA) ==>
  IPL = GENERAL IPL
  IML = MOSS IML WITH RESET
  CA  = ENABLE OR DISABLE A CHANNEL ADAPTER

PF5 = START REFRESH
```

Figure 9-3. Control Panel Function Selection Panel (Sample)

## Enabling or Disabling Channel Adapters from Console

CA numbering:

CA 1 on screen is: CA 1, interface 1 (1A on control panel).  
CA 2 on screen is: CA 1, interface 2 (1B on control panel).  
CA 3 on screen is: CA 2, interface 1 (2A on control panel).  
CA 4 on screen is: CA 2, interface 2 (2B on control panel).

### Procedure

- Type **CA** on the selection line of **control panel function selection** panel, then press **SEND**.

The **control panel CA state modification** panel is displayed (see page 9-5).

From this panel:

1. Replace the asterisk (\*) that is under the selected channel adapter by entering:
  - **D** to disable the corresponding channel adapter.
  - **E** to enable the corresponding channel adapter.
2. Press **SEND**.

The state of the channel adapters will be modified as requested, and messages on the console panel will show the answer to your request (for example,

'YOUR REQUEST TO UPDATE THE CA STATE IS TRANSMITTED')

**Note:** To display the latest CA state, press **PF5**.

INFORMATION FROM THE CONTROL PANEL			
HEX DISPLAY:	FEF	INSTALLED CA:	1 2 3
FUNCTION SELECT SWITCH:	NORMAL	CA STATE:	E D E
POWER CONTROL SWITCH:	LOCAL	REQUESTED CA STATE	E E E
CE SWITCHES:	ON OFF ON OFF	(E=ENABLED D=DISABLED)	
CHANNEL ADAPTER STATE UPDATE:		INSTALLED CA	1 2 3
		CA STATE	E D E
- REPLACE ASTERISK (*) BY E OR D TO UPDATE ==>			D D *
YOUR REQUEST TO UPDATE THE CA STATE IS TRANSMITTED:		CA3	ENABLED
		CA1 CA2	DISABLED
PF5 = START REFRESH			

Figure 9-4. Control Panel Channel Adapter Modification Panel (Sample)

## General IPL or MOSS IML with RESET from Console

### Procedure

1. Type *IPL* or *IML* on the selection line of **control panel function selection** panel, then press *SEND*.

2. A confirmation is requested by the following message:

CONFIRM YOUR SELECTION (Y=YES, N=NO) ==>

WARNING: WHEN IML OR IPL IS COMPLETE, MOSS IS DISCONNECTED

If you enter 'Y', the IML or IPL takes place (see following steps); otherwise the selection panel of Figure 9-3 on page 9-4 is displayed again.

3. **IPL/IML From Remote Console.**

If you used the remote maintenance password to log onto MOSS, the **Copy-right** panel, then the **Password** panel is displayed, for you to re-enter this remote password, and have the **3720 function menu** panel displayed.

4. **IPL/IML From Local Console.**

If you used the MOSS CE Switch 3 to log onto MOSS, the **3720 function menu** panel is displayed.

If the MOSS CE Switch 3 was not in the correct position,

- a. Set the MOSS CE Switch 3 On
- b. Set Console/Panel Switch on Panel
- c. IML MOSS from panel.

The **3720 function menu** panel is displayed.



---

## Chapter 10. Disk-Diskette Management Functions

This chapter explains how to use the *disk functions* in order to:

- Save the contents of the disk onto diskettes; see page 10-3.
- Restore the contents of diskettes onto the disk; see page 10-7.
- Initialize the disk; see page 10-10.
- Position the disk recording arm back to landing zone; see page 10-12.
- Initialize the diskette; see page 10-13.
- Install an Engineering Change (EC); see page 10-14.
- Check the disk after an I/O error, and replace that disk if required; see page 10-17.

**Warning:** BEFORE SELECTING THE DISK FUNCTIONS, SET MOSS OFFLINE.  
Use function *MOF* of the **CCU function menu** panel.

## Accessing the Disk Management Functions

You must first display the **3720 function menu** panel (first panel displayed after you entered the maintenance password on the **Password** panel, or if the MOSS CE Switch 3 is ON).

- Type **DF** (for DISK) in the **S/A**, then press **SEND**.
- 1. If the IML was made from disk, the **(service) disk function selection** panel will be displayed, and the functions available are those listed in Figure 10-1.

**Note:** All five options of that menu may be performed in customer mode or in maintenance mode.

- 2. If the IML was made from diskette, the **(service) disk function selection** panel will be displayed, and the functions available are those listed in Figure 10-2.

**Note:** The disk initialization function is **not** available to the customer.

DISK FUNCTION SELECTION

- SELECT ONE OF THE FOLLOWING OPTIONS ==>

1 = EC MICROCODE INSTALLATION  
2 = SAVE DISK ONTO DISKETTES  
3 = RESTORE DISK FROM DISKETTES  
4 = DISKETTE INITIALIZATION  
5 = POSITION DISK RECORDING ARM BACK TO LANDING ZONE

Figure 10-1. Disk Function Selection Panel (IML from Disk)

DISK FUNCTION SELECTION

- SELECT ONE OF THE FOLLOWING OPTIONS ==>

3 = RESTORE DISK FROM DISKETTES  
5 = POSITION DISK RECORDING ARM BACK TO LANDING ZONE  
6 = DISK INITIALIZATION

Figure 10-2. Disk Function Selection Panel (IML from Diskette)



---

## How to Save Disk Contents onto Diskettes

This function should be performed by the customer.

3720 *Extended Services* manual gives the customer detailed information on how to save the disk contents.

This function should be used:

- To create a back-up copy of initial diskettes.
- To copy the MOSS disk files after new MCFs have been installed.
- To copy the disk when:
  - The Configuration data file (CDF)
  - The Line description file (LDF)
  - The IPL port tables
  - The Control program procedureshave been modified.
- And at regular intervals to keep back-up diskettes at latest disk level.

The reason for that copy is to allow a later restore from the diskettes to the disk, either because the data of the disk is not valid (such as a bad patch applied), or the disk is physically damaged (bad tracks).

### Diskettes to Be Used

Disk contents will be saved on two or three diskettes.

### Diskette Format

The format of these diskettes must be compatible with the MOSS disk format.

To this end you may **only**:

- Use the spare diskettes corresponding to a back-up copy of the latest installation diskettes (last EC) or diskettes created in a previous MOSS disk save,
- Format PC diskettes using the MOSS **Diskette formatting** application of the Disk function (see 10-13).

The PC diskettes to be used are *2HC IBM PN 6109660* or equivalent references (double sided and high density).

### Diskette Terminology

The word **mount** will be used either on the console panels or in the text that follows to mean:

1. Insert the diskette into the diskette drive.
2. Close the diskette drive (by turning or pulling the door latch).

All original diskettes (either initial installation or new EC) come in two sets ('normal' primary and secondary, and 'back-up' primary and secondary).

When requesting to mount a spare diskette, the prompt will refer to *FIRST*, *SECOND* or *3721* diskette.

When saving the contents of the MOSS disk onto the diskettes the prompt will refer to *PRIMARY*, *SECONDARY* or *3721* diskette respectively. **Do not forget to label the diskette and diskette covers accordingly**, so that no ambiguity is left for later restore from diskettes to disk.

**Note:** The 3721 diskette is **not** used in the disk restore function.

## Disk-to-Diskette Procedure

- Type 2 in the SELECTION LINE, then press **SEND**.

The **(service) disk save function** panel will be displayed (see Figure 10-3).

The messages on the panel will ask you which data is to be saved:

- The data corresponding **only** to the 3721.  
This selection is allowed only to service personnel (see Figure 10-3).
- The data corresponding to the 3720 **only** or to the 3720 **and** the 3721 (see Figure 10-4).

```
SAVE DISK ONTO DISKETTES

DO YOU WANT TO SAVE ONLY 3721 INFORMATION (Y OR N) ==>

PF6: QUIT
```

Figure 10-3. Disk Save Function (Service Only)

```
SAVE DISK ONTO DISKETTES

DATE: 20/10/85 (MM/DD/YY)
ENTER SAVE ID (FROM 1 to 8 CHARACTERS) ==>

DO YOU WANT TO SAVE ALSO 3721 INFORMATION (Y OR N) ==>

PF6=QUIT
```

Figure 10-4. Save Disk Function Panel (Service and Customer)

## Field Explanation for Disk Save Selection Panel

- DATE:** Date at which you are running the function.  
This information will be entered on the diskette and will allow later checking during disk restore.
- SAVE ID:** An alphanumeric character string (1 to 8) that identifies the set of saving diskettes.  
This information will be entered on the diskette and will allow later checking during disk restore.
- ALSO 3721:** If you **also** want to save data concerning the 3721, enter Y.  
The 3721 diskette may be used to perform a new setup (for example, in the case of lost passwords).

## Disk Saving Procedure

For each diskette, the sequence is the following:

1. Mount the diskette (see Figure 10-5), then press *SEND*.
2. Information messages or error messages will keep you informed on the progress.
3. The disk-save on a diskette is completed. Remove the diskette, then press *SEND* (see Figure 10-6).

If no error occurred during the process, a panel tells you:

1. That the disk has been correctly saved.
2. To take note of date and identifiers. Write it on the diskette or diskette cover for later identification.
3. To press *SEND*.

See Figure 10-7.

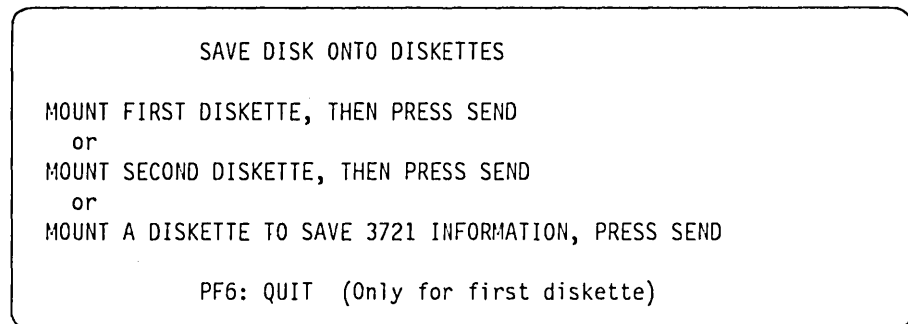


Figure 10-5. Save Disk Function Mount Diskette Panel

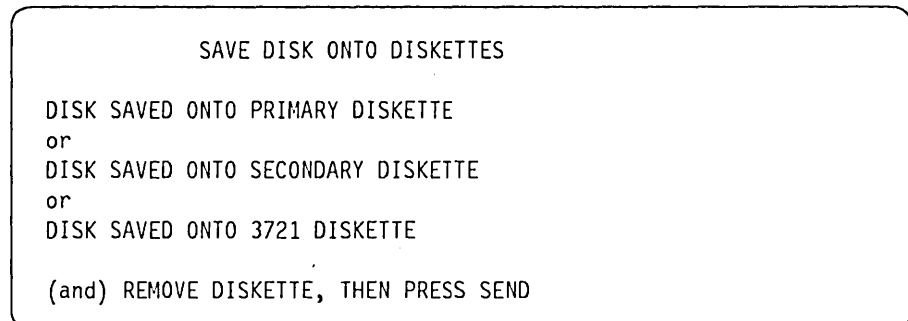


Figure 10-6. Save Disk Function Diskette Copy End Panel

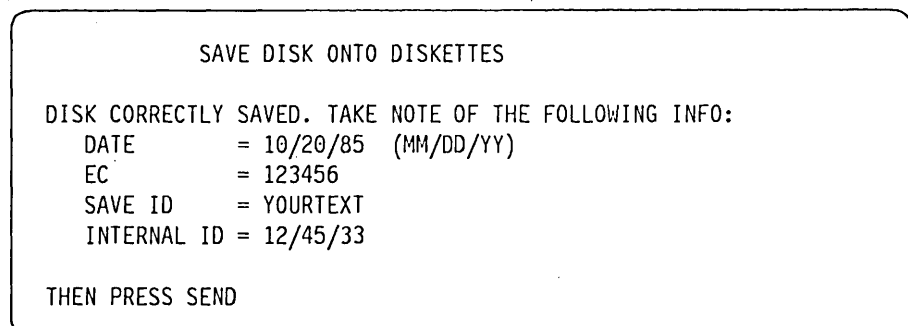


Figure 10-7. Save Disk Function End Panel

## Disk Save Error Messages

DISK ERROR. SAVE CANCELLED

or

UNABLE TO READ DISK SECTOR 1. SAVE CANCELLED

**Action:** Press *PF6* or type *T* in the *S/A*.

---

## How to Restore the Disk from Diskettes

This function should be used to restore the disk from back-up diskettes.

The reason for that restore is to get the whole disk to the level of the copied diskettes, either because the data of the disk is no longer valid (such as a bad patch applied), or the disk has just been initialized.

### Diskettes to Be Used

Although disk contents have been saved on two or three diskettes (the primary, the secondary, and optionally, the 3721 diskette), **only the primary diskette and the secondary diskette are used during the disk restore function.**

The 3721 diskette is not used during the disk restore function, it is only used for the installation (set-up) of the 3721 after passwords have been lost, or after moving the machine.

The format of these diskettes must be compatible with the MOSS disk format.

To this end you may use **only** those diskettes that you have created in a previous MOSS disk save, or the back-up diskettes (last installation or last EC).

**Diskette Naming:** When restoring onto MOSS disk the contents of back-up diskettes, the prompts will refer to the PRIMARY, then to the SECONDARY diskette.

These are respectively the first and second diskette you used during the disk saving function.

### Diskette-to-Disk Procedure

- Type 3 in the SELECTION LINE, then press **SEND**.

The **restore disk function** panel will be displayed (see Figure 10-8 on page 10-8).

The messages on the panel will prompt you for the actions required (mounting diskettes, checking the data, ..).

Restoring the disk from the diskettes is done in two steps:

- Step 1: checking that both diskettes are the correct ones, and that they belong to the same pair.
- Step 2: copying the diskettes to the disk.

### Checking the Diskettes

The sequence is the following:

1. Mount the primary diskette (see Figure 10-8 on page 10-8), then press **SEND**.
2. The primary diskette identification is displayed with date of save, save identifier, and internal identifier (see Figure 10-9 on page 10-8).
3. Type Y and press **SEND** if the information displayed corresponds to the diskette you thought.
4. Mount the secondary diskette (see Figure 10-10 on page 10-8), then press **SEND**.
  - If the identifiers of the secondary and primary diskettes **do not match**, the panel displays both identifiers.

**Action:** Press **SEND** and mount the correct secondary diskette.

- If secondary and primary diskette identifiers **match** you are requested to successively mount the primary diskette, then the secondary diskette.

5. When both diskettes have been checked for validity and copied to the MOSS disk, the following messages are displayed:

DISK CORRECTLY RESTORED  
PERFORM MOSS IML FROM CONTROL PANEL  
(NO OTHER ACTION IS POSSIBLE)

**Warning:** If you enter **T** (Terminate) before that message, you set MOSS down, and the disk contents will not be valid.

## Disk Restore Panels and Error Messages

**Error message** DISK ERROR. FUNCTION CANCELLED

**Action** Press **PF6** or type **T** in the **S/A**

RESTORE DISK FROM DISKETTES

MOUNT PRIMARY DISKETTE, THEN PRESS SEND

PF6: QUIT

Figure 10-8. Restore Disk Function, Mount Primary Diskette Panel

RESTORE DISK FROM DISKETTES

MOUNTED PRIMARY DISKETTE IDENTIFICATION:

CREATED ON = 10/20/85 (MM/DD/YY)  
SAVE ID = YOURTEXT  
INTERNAL ID = 12/45/33

- PLEASE CONFIRM (Y/N) ==>  
PF6: QUIT

Figure 10-9. Restore Disk Function, Diskette Identification Panel

RESTORE DISK FROM DISKETTES

MOUNT SECONDARY DISKETTE, THEN PRESS SEND

WARNING:  
FROM NOW ON, SELECTING TERMINATE CAUSES MOSS DOWN  
AND DISK DESTROYED

Figure 10-10. Restore Disk Function, Mount Secondary Diskette Panel

RESTORE DISK FROM DISKETTES

DISKETTES DO NOT BELONG TO THE SAME PAIR

PRIMARY CREATED = 10/20/85 SAVE ID: 1234 INT. ID: 12/33/45  
SECONDARY CREATED= 11/21/85 SAVE ID: 2222 INT. ID: 08/22/55

- PRESS SEND

PF6: QUIT

Figure 10-11. Restore Disk Function, Unmatched in Diskette Identification Panel

---

## How to Initialize the Disk

This function should be used in the case of I/O errors on disk (see "Hard Disk Trouble Analysis and Replacement" on page 10-17).

This disk function:

- Formats the disk, so that it is ready to receive a diskette-to-disk transfer or restore.
- Writes on the first sector of the disk the serial number that you will enter when prompted to do so.

**Warning:**

This function can only be selected if the IML has been done in diskette mode (see "Diskette Mode" on page 12-6).

Passwords are initialized to default values.

### Disk Initialization Procedure

- Type 6 in the SELECTION LINE, then press *SEND*.

The **disk initialization** panel will be displayed (see Figure 10-12).

The messages on the panel will prompt you for the actions required.

See Figure 10-12 and Figure 10-13 on page 10-11.

The panel will then display successively the following messages:

DISK FORMATTING IN PROGRESS, then

READ CHECKING IN PROGRESS, then

FORMAT COMPLETED, xx DEFECTIVE TRACK  
or NO DEFECTIVE TRACK, ALTERNATE TRACK ASSIGNMENT MAP EMPTY

**Note:** If defective tracks have been found, the panel will display the alternate assignment map, that is, the way alternate tracks have been assigned to replace tracks found defective (see Figure 10-14 on page 10-11).

DISK INITIALIZATION

ENTER MACHINE SERIAL NO (7 NUMERIC CHARACTERS) ==> 1234567

PF6: QUIT

Figure 10-12. Disk Initialization Panel (Sample)



DISK INITIALIZATION

MACHINE SERIAL NUMBER = 1234567

- PLEASE CONFIRM (Y OR N) ==>

PF6: QUIT

Figure 10-13. Disk Initialization, Confirmation Panel (Sample)

ALTERNATE TRACK ASSIGNMENT MAP

DEFECTIVE TRACK	ALTERNATE TRACK	DEFECTIVE TRACK	ALTERNATE TRACK
HEAD-CYLINDER	HEAD-CYLINDER	HEAD-CYLINDER	HEAD-CYLINDER
SSSSSSSSSS	3 003	TTTTTTTTTT	0 004
SSSSSSSSSS	1 004	TTTTTTTTTT	2 004
SSSSSSSSSS	3 004	TTTTTTTTTT	0 0005
SSSSSSSSSS	1 005		
SSSSSSSSSS	3 005		

FORMAT ERRORS: xx ID ERRORS: xx DATA ERRORS: xx  
PF6=QUIT <PF7=BACKWARD PF8=FORWARD>

Figure 10-14. Disk Initialization, Alternate Track Assignment Panel (Sample)

---

## Position Disk Recording Arm back to Landing Zone

This function should be used before moving the 3720 to another location, or before removing the disk.

This disk function sets the disk arm back to the landing zone, so that:

- The 3720 can be moved to another location without any unwanted moves of the disk arm.

The procedure is the following:

1. Type 5 in the SELECTION LINE and press *SEND*
2. Power off the 3720
3. Move the 3720
4. Power on reset

- The 3720 door can be opened without any unwanted moves of the disk arm.

The procedure is the following:

1. Type 5 in the SELECTION LINE and press *SEND*
2. Open the 3720 door
3. Perform whatever tasks are required
4. Close the 3720 door
5. Type *T* (Terminate) to put the disk arm in its working position.

The function will take place immediately, and when complete, the following messages will be displayed:

```
DISK RECORDING ARM IS NOW IN LANDING ZONE  
SELECTING TERMINATE RESTARTS DISK ACTIVITY
```

---

## Diskette Formatting

The MOSS disk can only be copied (saved) to diskettes that have been initialized to a specific format required by MOSS.

This function is performed in two phases: formatting and checking.

### Diskette Initialization Procedure

- Type 4 in the SELECTION LINE, then press *SEND*.

The **diskette initialization** panel will be displayed.

The panel will then display successively the following messages:

PLEASE CONFIRM YOUR SELECTION (Y OR N)

If Y

MOUNT THE DISKETTE YOU WANT TO INITIALIZE, THEN PRESS SEND  
DISKETTE FORMATTING IN PROGRESS, then  
DISKETTE CHECKING IN PROGRESS, then  
DISKETTE INITIALIZATION SUCCESSFULLY COMPLETED

**Note:** If defective tracks have been found, the panel will display the number of tracks found in error while formatting or checking.

DO NOT USE A DISKETTE WITH DEFECTIVE TRACKS

---

## Installing an Engineering Change (EC)

This section describes the complete sequence of actions that are required when installing an EC using the operator console.

The *3720 Extended Services* manual describes how to install an EC from the control panel.

**Note:** In customer documentation, the EC is referred to as a microcode change.

The complete sequence means from the time the EC is available (external diskettes) to the moment where the updated microcode is running.

You have received four diskettes (two 'normal', primary and secondary, and two 'back-up', primary and secondary). These are two sets of diskettes that contain the Engineering Change (EC) that must be installed on this 3720.

This EC, when installed, will modify the 3720 microcode to the latest level, that is, with all microcode fixes issued since the last EC. The microcode changes:

- Correct errors in the microcode.
- Reflect the latest modifications to the 3720 functions.

### EC Installation Sequence

When installing an EC, the following sequence **MUST** be followed:

1. The NCP should not be loaded.

For integrity reasons, an EC installation should not be made while the NCP is running. If an automatic scanner IML occurs, it may be using incorrect microcode.

2. **The IML must be made from disk** and the rotary switch should be in *MOSS IML* position.

3. Log onto MOSS:

- a. Set the *Console-panel* switch to *Panel*
- b. Set the MOSS CE Switch 3 *On*.
- c. Press the *Function Start* switch.

The **3720 function menu** panel is displayed.

4. Select the *DISK FUNCTION* from that panel by typing *DF*, then pressing *SEND*.

The **disk function selection** panel will be displayed (see Figure 10-1 on page 10-2).

5. Select the *EC INSTALLATION* function from that panel by typing *1* in the *OPTION SELECTION* line, then pressing *SEND*.

The **EC installation** panels will be displayed (see Figure 10-15 on page 10-16).

The messages on the panels will prompt you for the actions required (mounting diskettes, checking the data, ..).

Installing an EC from the diskettes is done in two steps:

- Step 1: Check that both diskettes belong to the same EC.
- Step 2: Copy the diskettes to the disk.

The sequence is the following:

- a. Mount the primary diskette (see Figure 10-15 on page 10-16), then press *SEND*.

- b. The primary diskette identification is displayed with EC number and internal identifier (see Figure 10-16 on page 10-16).
  - c. Type Y and press **SEND** if the EC number is correct.
  - d. Mount the secondary diskette, as requested by prompt (see Figure 10-17 on page 10-16), then press **SEND**.
    - If the EC numbers and identifiers of the secondary and primary diskettes **do not match**, the panel displays both diskette identifiers (see Figure 10-18 on page 10-16).  
**Action:** Press **SEND** and mount the correct secondary diskette.
    - If the secondary and primary diskette identifiers **match**, you are requested to successively mount the primary diskette, then the secondary diskette.
  - e. When both diskettes have been checked for validity and copied to the MOSS disk (*diskette image*), the corresponding message is displayed:
 

```
EC xxxxxxxx CORRECTLY INSTALLED
PERFORM MOSS IML FROM CONTROL PANEL
(NO OTHER ACTION IS POSSIBLE)
```

**Warning:** If you enter *T* (Terminate) before these messages, you set MOSS down, and the disk contents will not be valid.

**Note:** After correct validation of the diskette pair, the customer files, such as the CDF, are copied from MOSS disk to the primary diskette.
  - f. Remove the diskette from the diskette drive.
6. IML (or reset) MOSS using the **Function Select** switch in the MOSS IML position (and activation of the *Function Start* switch).  
 The **Copyright** panel is displayed, then, when you press **SEND**, the **3720 function menu** panel is displayed.
  7. Select the MCF function on that panel by typing *MCF* (for Microcode fix) in the *S/A*, then press **SEND**.  
 The **MCF/patch function selection** panel will be displayed.
  8. Apply the MCFs that were included in the EC diskettes (see "MCF Upgrade of Microcode" on page 6-8)..
  9. Set the **Function Select** switch to **MOSS IML**.
  10. IML MOSS.  
 The storage now contains the updated version of the microcode.  

**Note:** Before giving the 3720 back to the customer, DO NOT FORGET to set the 3720 into customer mode (MOSS CE switch 3 off). Follow the "Leaving Procedure after Local Connection" on page 1-19.
  11. Ask the customer to save the disk contents, using the procedure described in Chapter 'Disk Functions' of the *3720 Extended Services* manual, SY33-0066.

## EC Installation Panels and Error Messages

DISK/DISKETTE ERROR. FUNCTION CANCELLED

Action Press *PF6* or type *T* in the *S/A*.

EC MICROCODE INSTALLATION

- MOUNT PRIMARY DISKETTE, THEN PRESS SEND

PF6: QUIT

Figure 10-15. EC Installation, Mount Primary Diskette Panel

EC MICROCODE INSTALLATION

MOUNTED PRIMARY DISKETTE IDENTIFICATION:

EC NUMBER = xxxxxxx  
INTERNAL ID = 12/45/33

- PLEASE CONFIRM (Y/N) ==>

PF6: QUIT

Figure 10-16. EC Installation, Diskette Identification Panel

EC MICROCODE INSTALLATION

MOUNT SECONDARY DISKETTE, THEN PRESS SEND

WARNING:  
FROM NOW ON, SELECTING TERMINATE CAUSES LOSS DOWN  
AND DISK DESTROYED

Figure 10-17. EC Installation, Mount Secondary Diskette Panel

EC MICROCODE INSTALLATION

DISKETTES DO NOT BELONG TO THE SAME PAIR

PRIMARY EC NUMBER = xxxxxxx INTERNAL ID: 12/33/45  
SECONDARY EC NUMBER = yyyyyyy INTERNAL ID: 08/22/55

- PRESS SEND

PF6: QUIT

Figure 10-18. EC Installation, Unmatch in Diskette Identification Panel

---

## Hard Disk Trouble Analysis and Replacement

This section describes the various procedures that should be used when MOSS signals an I/O error on the disk.

Two different procedures may be followed:

1. The backup copies of primary and secondary diskettes are valid and up-to-date.

- You have saved the MOSS disk recently,
- You have a valid backup copy of the last EC installed, or
- You have a valid backup copy of the initial installation

and the CDF has not been modified since.

Use the 'backup' diskettes and **follow procedure 1.**

2. The back up copies of primary and secondary diskettes are not valid or not up-to-date, or the installation is not successfully completed.

- You have not saved the MOSS disk recently,
- You have an invalid backup copy of the last EC installed,
- You have an invalid backup copy of the initial installation,
- The installation is not successfully completed, or
- The CDF has been modified since last copy has been made.

Use the 'normal' diskettes and **follow procedure 2.**

### Procedure 1

**You have a valid and up-to-date set of backup diskettes.**

- **STEP 1 -**

1. Set the *Console-panel* switch to *Panel*
2. Set the MOSS CE Switch 3 *On*.
3. Mount the 'backup' primary diskette,
4. IML in diskette mode.
5. Log onto MOSS with the customer's or service personnel console (PT2 or PC).

- **STEP 2 -** Restore the disk from backup diskettes, that is, the primary and secondary diskettes that contain the latest version of the microcode and the current CDF.

Use the RESTORE DISK function (3) of the 'DF' function that is on the **3720 function menu** panel. See "How to Restore the Disk from Diskettes" on page 10-7.

**If the restore is successful, you have finished.**

- **STEP 3 -** Re-initialize the current disk as explained in "How to Initialize the Disk" on page 10-10 (You must enter the serial number of the 3720).

**If disk initialization fails, go to STEP 4.**

After disk initialization, try to restore the disk from the diskettes again (see STEP 2).

**If the restore is successful, you have finished.**

**If the restore fails because of an I/O error, go to STEP 4.**

- **STEP 4 -** Replace the hard disk file adapter (DFA).

Exchange the FRUs corresponding to the DFA.

Chapter 6 of the *Maintenance Information Procedures* manual explains the DFA replacement procedure.

After DFA replacement, try to restore the disk from the diskettes again (see STEP 2).

**If the restore is successful, you have finished.**

**If the restore fails because of an I/O error, go to STEP 5.**

- **STEP 5** - Re-initialize the current disk as explained in "How to Initialize the Disk" on page 10-10 (You must enter the serial number of the 3720).

**If initialization fails, go to STEP 6.**

After disk initialization, try to restore the disk from the diskettes again (see STEP 2).

**If the restore is successful, you have finished.**

**If the restore fails because of an I/O error, go to STEP 6.**

- **STEP 6** - Check disk voltages, PS-2, and the MAC card.

**If the problem persists, go to STEP 7.**

- **STEP 7** - Exchange the disk.

1. Replace (exchange) the hard disk.

Chapter 6 of the *Maintenance Information Procedures* manual explains how to exchange the hard disk.

2. Initialize the new disk, as explained in "How to Initialize the Disk" on page 10-10 (You must enter the serial number of the 3720).

After disk initialization, try to restore the disk from the diskette again (see STEP 2).

**If the restore is successful, you have finished.**

**If the restore fails because of an I/O error, call higher support.**

## Procedure 2

Your latest set of backup diskettes is either invalid or not up-to-date. You will use the 'normal' primary and secondary diskettes (from the latest set of diskettes: initial installation or latest EC).

- **STEP A.**

1. Set the *Console-panel* switch to *Panel*
2. Set the MOSS CE Switch 3 *On*.
3. Mount the 'normal' primary diskette
4. IML in diskette mode
5. Log onto MOSS with the customer's or service personnel console (PT2 or PC).

- **STEP B** - Restore the disk from 'normal' primary and secondary diskettes, that is, the primary and secondary diskettes that contain the latest version of the microcode (initial installation or latest EC).

Use the RESTORE DISK function (3) of the 'DF' function that is on the **3720 function menu** panel. See "How to Restore the Disk from Diskettes" on page 10-7.

**If the restore is successful, go to STEP G.**

**If the restore fails because of an I/O error, go to STEP C.**

- **STEP C** - Re-initialize the current disk as explained in "How to Initialize the Disk" on page 10-10 (You must enter the serial number of the 3720).

**If initialization fails, go to STEP D.**

After disk initialization, try to restore the disk from the diskettes again (see STEP B).

**If the restore is successful, you have finished.**



**If the restore fails because of an I/O error, go to STEP D.**

- **STEP D** - Replace the hard disk file adapter (DFA).

Exchange the FRUs corresponding to the DFA.

Chapter 6 of the *Maintenance Information Procedures* manual explains the DFA replacement procedure.

After DFA replacement, try to restore the disk from the diskette again (see STEP B).

**If the restore is successful, go to step H.**

**If the restore fails because of an I/O error, go to STEP E.**

- **STEP E** - Re-initialize the current disk as explained in "How to Initialize the Disk" on page 10-10 (You must enter the serial number of the 3720).

**If initialization fails, go to STEP F.**

After disk initialization, try to restore the disk from the diskette again (see STEP B).

**If the restore is successful, go to step H.**

**If the restore fails because of an I/O error, go to STEP F.**

- **STEP F** - Check disk voltages, PS-2, and the MAC card.

**If the problem persists, go to STEP G.**

- **STEP G** - Exchange the disk.

1. Replace (exchange) the hard disk.

Chapter 6 of the *Maintenance Information Procedures* manual explains how to exchange the hard disk.

2. Initialize the new disk, as explained in "How to Initialize the Disk" on page 10-10 (You must enter the serial number of the 3720).

After disk initialization, try to restore the disk from the diskette again (see STEP B).

**If the restore is successful, go to step H.**

**If the restore fails because of an I/O error, call higher support.**

- **STEP H** - Run a CDF *CREATE*, and have the customer run a CDF update if modifications have been made to the machine and its features.
- **STEP I** - Apply the MCFs that were included in the diskettes (see "MCF Upgrade of Microcode" on page 6-8).
- **STEP J** - Run the diagnostics to check the hardware.
- **STEP K** - Ask the customer to update the programmable line speeds, if required.
- **STEP L** - Ask the customer to save the contents of the MOSS disk, using the DISK SAVE option of the 'DF' function (see "How to Save Disk Contents onto Diskettes" on page 10-3).

**Note:** If the backup copies are not valid, the customer must order new diskettes and format them using the 'DISKETTE INITIALIZATION' option of the 'DF' function (see "Diskette Formatting" on page 10-13).



---

## Chapter 11. Token-Ring Subsystem (TRSS) Functions

Token-ring subsystem (TRSS) functions help you debug the token-ring interface of the 3720 Models 11 and 12. In the 3720, the TRSS consists in one token-ring adapter (TRA), which is composed of the token-ring multiplexor card (TRM) and up to two token-ring interface coupler cards (TICs).

In this chapter we will see the panels and procedures for all TRSS functions.

---

### Selecting TRSS Functions

First, display the **(Service) 3720 function menu** panel. This panel is displayed after you entered the maintenance password on the **Password** panel or if you used the MOSS CE switch 3.

- Type *TRS* in the *S/A*, then press *SEND*.

The **TRSS function selection** panel is displayed.

**Warning:** TRSS functions may disrupt communications on the rings attached to the TRA.

All possible TRSS functions are displayed in the *secondary* menu (left side of the panel):

1. SELECT; see "Select a Token-Ring Adapter (TRA)" on page 11-3.
2. CONNECT/DISC; see "TRA Connection and Disconnection" on page 11-4. May be disruptive.
3. TRM REGS; see "Display/Alter TRM Registers" on page 11-5. The alter function may be disruptive.
4. TIC INTR REG; see "Display/Alter TIC Interrupt Register" on page 11-8. The alter function may be disruptive.
5. DPLY STORAGE; see "Display TIC Storage" on page 11-9. May be disruptive.
6. DUMP; see "Dump TIC Storage" on page 11-11. May be disruptive.
7. DPLY SCB,SSB; see "Display TIC SCB and SSB" on page 11-13.
8. DPLY PARM BLKS; see "Display TIC Parameter Blocks" on page 11-14.
9. TIC ERR STAT; see "Display Token-Ring Status" on page 11-15.

```

      MSA line 1
      MSA line 2
      MSA line 3
CUSTOMER ID: ..... 3720-11      SERIAL NUMBER: xxxxxxxx
----- MAINTENANCE MODE -----
FUNCTION ON SCREEN: TRSS FUNCTIONS
SYSTEM INPUT AREA (SIA) ==>

T:TERMINATE  OFF: LOGOFF  PF1: MOVE TO SIA  PF2: CCU FNCTN  PF3: ALARM

1 SELECT
2 CONNECT/DISC
3 TRM REGS
4 TIC INTR REG
5 DPLY STORAGE
6 DUMP
7 DPLY SCB,SSB
8 DPLY PARM BLKS
9 TIC ERR STAT

```

Figure 11-1. TRSS Function Selection Panel

## Messages

Refer to Appendix B, "Messages and Alarms" on page B-1 and to "Machine Status Area" on page 1-20 for the action to be taken for some messages displayed when TRSS functions are run.

## Select a Token-Ring Adapter (TRA)

Before you call any TRSS function you must select a token-ring adapter (# '02' on the 3720 Models 11 and 12). To assist you in making a selection, the line addresses associated with the TRA and the token-ring interface couplers (TICs) attached to each TRM are displayed (from hardware CDF).

The mode of the TRA (connected or disconnected) is displayed in line 3 of the machine status area (MSA). If you try to call a TRSS function before selecting the TRA, an error message is displayed.

**Note:** Although there is only one TRA on the 3720 Models 11 or 12 (TRA # 02), you must still follow the TRA selection procedure to be consistent with other communication controllers such as the 3725.

### Procedure

- Type *1* in the *S/A*, of the **TRSS function selection** panel (see Figure 11-1 on page 11-2), then press *SEND*.

The **TRA selection** panel will be displayed (see Figure 11-2).

1. Type the TRA number (02)
2. Press *SEND* to confirm

The correspondence between line address and TRA number is the following:  
TRA #02 (3720-11 or 3720-12): Line addresses 016 and 017. The line addresses corresponding to the TIC(s) installed are on the right of the screen.

**Note:** TRA #01 does not exist.

TRA 02 SELECTED: LOOK IN MSA FOR MODE is displayed.

1 SELECT	SELECT
2 CONNECT/DISC	ENTER THE TRA # ==> _
3 TRM REGS	TRA# LINE ADDRESS TIC
4 TIC INTR REG	< 02 016 017 1 2>
5 DPLY STORAGE	
6 DUMP	
7 DPLY SCB,SSB	
8 DPLY PARM BLKS	
9 TIC ERR STAT	
<PRESS SEND TO CONFIRM>	
<TRA nn SELECTED: LOOK IN MSA FOR MODE>	

Figure 11-2. TRA Selection Panel

## TRA Connection and Disconnection

Use this function to modify the mode of the TRA.

### Procedure

1. Select the TRA (as explained page 11-3), then press PF1 (move to SIA),
2. Type 2 in the SIA, then press *SEND*.

The **TRA Connection/Disconnection** panel is displayed (see Figure 11-3).

From this panel you may:

- Enter the new mode (*CT* to connect or *DS* to disconnect) next to ==>, then press *SEND*.

### Connect (TRA Mode)

The TRA is connected when it runs under the control of the control program. The control program handles all interrupts (except in the case of an MIOH error).

The PIO DISABLE and the DISCONNECT bits in the TRM Level 1 Error Status are off.

### Disconnect (TRA Mode)

The TRA is disconnected when it does not run under the control of the control program but under the control of the MOSS microcode. MOSS handles all interrupts and PIOs to/from the TIC.

The PIO DISABLE and the DISCONNECT bits in the TRM Level 1 Error Status are off.

### Unknown (TRA Mode)

UNKNOWN means that a non-recoverable error occurred during the connection/disconnection process or that an MIOC/IOC error occurred while getting level 1 error status during TRA selection. Connect/Disconnect may be re-tried.

1 SELECT	TRA CONNECT/DISCONNECT
2 CONNECT/DISC	
3 TRM REGS	
4 TIC INTR REG	TYPE CT TO CONNECT
5 DPLY STORAGE	DS TO DISCONNECT ==> _
6 DUMP	
7 DPLY SCB,SSB	
8 DPLY PARM BLKS	
9 TIC ERR STAT	PRESS SEND TO CONFIRM

Figure 11-3. TRA Connection/Disconnection Panel

## Display/Alter TRM Registers

**Warning:** Any alter may be disruptive.

Use this function to display the registers of the selected TRA, or modify (alter) the contents of these registers.

### Procedure

1. Select the TRA (as explained page 11-3),
2. Type 3 in the *S/A*, then press *SEND*.

The first from the two **Display/alter TRM registers** panels is displayed (see Figure 11-4).

To display the second panel, press *PF8* (see Figure 11-5 on page 11-6).

The register contents are updated on the panel whenever *SEND* is pressed (but not in alter mode).

### PF Keys

PF4=ALTER - See "Alter Procedure" on page 11-6.

PF5=REFRESH - Re-displays data every 500ms. This allows you to view data in its most updated state. To stop the refresh, press *BREAK* (ATTN).

PF7=BACKWARD - Displays previous panel.

PF8=FORWARD - Displays next panel.

	DISPLAY/ALTER TRM REGISTERS (1)	
1 SELECT	TRM CONTROL:	TIC CONTROL(R/W): 1 2
2 CONNECT/DISC	RESET(R):	RESET ==> - -
3 TRM REGS	HI PRI0(R/W) ==> -	INH INTR ==> - -
4 TIC INTR REG		INH DMA ==> - -
5 DPLY STORAGE		MOSS CONTROL ==> - -
6 DUMP	DIAG(R/W): TRM WRAP ==> -	DMA R(1)/W(0) ==> - -
7 DPLY SCB,SSB	PIO(1)/DMA(0) ==> -	ODD(1)/EVEN(0) ==> - -
8 DPLY PARM BLKS	TA,TD BAD PARITY ==> -	BYTE 0,1 ==> - -
9 TIC ERR STAT	FORCE TIMEOUT ==> -	DMA COUNTER ==> - -
	FORCE IDLE ERROR ==> -	START ==> - -
	FORCE BAD PTY INT ==> -	CSCW,BUS BAD PTY ==> - -
	PF4: ALTER	PF5: REFRESH PF8: FORWARD

Figure 11-4. Display/Alter TRM Registers (Panel 1 of 2)

DISPLAY/ALTER TRM REGISTERS (2)	
1 SELECT	LID BASE(R/W) ==> _____
2 CONNECT/DISC	DATA REGISTER(R/W) ==> _____
3 TRM REGS	IR/BR(R/W):
4 TIC INTR REG	IR1 ==> - IR2 ==> -
5 DPLY STORAGE	BR1 ==> - BR2 ==> -
6 DUMP	CSCW(R): _____
7 DPLY SCB,SSB	LEVEL 1 ERROR STATUS(R): _____ BINARY
8 DPLY PARM BLKS	PF4: ALTER PF5: REFRESH PF7: BACKWARD
9 TIC ERR STAT	

Figure 11-5. Display/Alter TRM Registers (Panel 2 of 2)

The following table shows the TRM registers which may be displayed or altered:

Register	Read	Write	Detail
TRM State Control	x	W	x
TIC State Control	x	W	x
Level 1 Error Status	x		
LID Base Register	x	W	
IR/BR	x	W	x
Diag Register	x	W	x
Data Buffer Register	x	W	
CSCW	x		

Detail: Contents are shown in bit format with meaning of each bit given in Chapter 5 of the *Maintenance Information Reference (MIR)* manual.

W: Alter function available and preceded with warning.

x: Display function available.

## Alter Procedure

To alter the contents of a register, you must press PF4 twice: once to select alter mode and once to confirm. A warning message is displayed after the first PF4. The alterable fields will be highlighted. You may update these fields and press SEND to alter the register contents or press PF6 to ignore the alter (instead of SEND).

After the alter is complete, the contents of the registers are read and displayed again. This allows you to verify that the contents were actually updated.

The register contents are updated on the console panel whenever the SEND key is pressed (but not in alter mode).

A refresh option is available which updates the console panel periodically.



---

## TIC Selection

Most of the TRSS functions that follow require you to first select the TIC (#1 or #2) for which you want the function to be performed.

### Procedure

1. Select the TRA (as explained page 11-3), then press PF1 (move to SIA),
2. Type the number (4 to 9) corresponding to the TRSS function selected,
3. Press **SEND**.

The **TIC selection** panel will be displayed (see Figure 11-6).

To select a TIC:

1. Type **1** or **2** next to the TIC ID line of the **TIC selection** panel (see Figure 11-6),
2. Press **SEND**.

The panel for the TRSS function selected will be displayed, with the information corresponding to the TIC selected.

1 SELECT	
2 CONNECT/DISC	
3 TRM REGS	
4 TIC INTR REG	
5 DPLY STORAGE	
6 DUMP	ENTER THE TIC ID (1 OR 2) ==> _
7 DPLY SCB,SSB	
8 DPLY PARM BLKS	VALID CHOICES ARE: 1 <2>
9 TIC ERR STAT	LINE # : 016 <017>

Figure 11-6. TIC Selection from TRSS Menu

**Note:** If a TIC has been selected during the current TRSS session, the identifier (1 or 2) of the last TIC selected is displayed in the input field. You may enter a new TIC number or use the previous one.

## Display/Alter TIC Interrupt Register

**Warning:** Any alter may be disruptive.

Use this function to display the interrupt register of the selected TIC, or modify (alter) the contents of this register.

### Procedure

1. Select the TRA (as explained page 11-3), then press PF1 (move to SIA),
2. Type 4 in the S/A, then press **SEND**,
3. Select TIC #1 or #2 (as explained page 11-7).

The **Display/Alter TIC Interrupt Register** panel is then displayed (see Figure 11-7).

DISPLAY/ALTER TIC INTERRUPT REGISTER			
1 SELECT	INTERRUPT ==>	OR	INTERRUPT ADAPTER ==>
2 CONNECT/DISC	(HEX)		RESET ==>
3 TRM REGS			SSB CLEAR ==>
4 TIC INTR REG			EXECUTE ==>
5 DPLY STORAGE			SCB REQUEST ==>
6 DUMP			RECEIVE CONTINUE ==>
7 DPLY SCB,SSB			RECEIVE VALID ==>
8 DPLY PARM BLKS			XMIT VALID ==>
9 TIC ERR STAT			RESET SYSTEM INTR ==>
			INITIALIZE CODE(R) _____
			INTERRUPT CODE(R) _____
	PF4: ALTER	PF5: REFRESH	

Figure 11-7. Display/Alter TIC Interrupt Register

### Alter Procedure

**Warning:** The alter function should be used only under the guidance of your support structure.

Register contents are shown in bit format, with the meaning of each bit given in Chapter 5 of the *Maintenance Information Reference (MIR)* manual.

To alter the contents of the TIC interrupt register, you must press PF4 twice: once to select alter mode and once to confirm. A warning message is displayed after the first PF4. The alterable fields will be highlighted. You may update these fields and press **SEND** to alter the register contents or press PF6 to ignore the alter (instead of **SEND**).

After the alter is complete, the register contents are read and displayed again. This allows you to verify that the contents were actually updated.

The register contents are updated on the screen whenever the **SEND** key is pressed (but not in alter mode).

**Note:** Two fields **INITIALIZE CODE(R)** and **INTERRUPT CODE(R)** **cannot** be altered (read only).

A refresh option is available which updates the screen periodically.

## Display TIC Storage

**Warning:** Displaying TIC storage may be disruptive. The TRA must be in DISCONNECT mode.

Use this function to display the TIC storage in hexadecimal or EBCDIC format.

### Procedure

1. Select the TRA (as explained page 11-3), then press PF1 (move to SIA),
2. Type 5 in the SIA, then press *SEND*,
3. Select TIC #1 or #2 (as explained page 11-7).

The **display TIC storage** panel is then displayed (see Figure 11-8). To request a display of the TIC storage:

1. Type the starting address (hexadecimal halfword, '0' to 'FFF').  
Must be an **EVEN** address, otherwise it is rounded to the next even address, and a message is displayed.
2. Type the number of halfwords to be displayed (1 to 48).
3. Press *SEND*.

When you press *SEND*, the contents of the selected TIC RAM are displayed (see Figure 11-9 on page 11-10).

The first four characters of each displayed line give the storage addresses. Scrolling is permitted (using PF7 and PF8). Up to 48 halfwords may be displayed at one time.

1 SELECT	DISPLAY TIC STORAGE
2 CONNECT/DISC	
3 TRM REGS	- ENTER ADDRESS OF START OF DISPLAY ==> ____ (HEX)
4 TIC INTR REG	(RAM: 0 TO FFF)
5 DPLY STORAGE	- ENTER NBR OF HALFWORDS TO DPLY (UP TO 48) ==> ____ (DEC)
6 DUMP	
7 DPLY SCB,SSB	
8 DPLY PARM BLKS	
9 TIC ERR STAT	

Figure 11-8. Display TIC Storage Panel (Selection)

DISPLAY TIC STORAGE	
1 SELECT	
2 CONNECT/DISC	
3 TRM REGS	- ENTER ADDRESS OF START OF DISPLAY ==> ____ (HEX)
4 TIC INTR REG	(RAM: 0 TO FFF)
5 DPLY STORAGE	- ENTER NBR OF HALFWORDS TO DPLY (UP TO 48) ==> ____ (DEC)
6 DUMP	
7 DPLY SCB,SSB	0000 dddddddd dddddddd dddddddd dddddddd cccccccccccccccc
8 DPLY PARM BLKS	0010
9 TIC ERR STAT	0020
	.
	0050 dddddddd . . .
	<PF7: BACKWARD PF8: FORWARD>

Figure 11-9. Display TIC Storage Panel (Sample)

---

## Dump TIC Storage

Use this function to dump the TIC storage in hexadecimal format.

**Warning:** Dumping TIC storage may be disruptive. The TRA must be in DIS-CONNECT mode.

### Procedure

1. Select the TRA (as explained page 11-3),
2. Type 6 in the S/A, then press *SEND*,
3. Select TIC #1 or #2 (as explained page 11-7).

The **Dump TIC Storage** panel is then displayed (see Figure 11-10).

To request a dump of the TIC storage for the selected TIC:

1. Type Y next to ==>
2. Press *SEND*.

When you press *SEND*, the following occurs:

1. Message DUMP IN PROGRESS is displayed
2. Message DUMP COMPLETE is displayed
3. The dump is sent onto MOSS disk in CHGTRSS

**Note:** In case of errors, you are notified by messages.

A TIC dump may be deleted or examined by using the DUMP DISPLAY/DELETE function (DD) (See "Deleting a File from MOSS Disk" on page 5-12).

1 SELECT	DUMP TIC STORAGE
2 CONNECT/DISC	
3 TRM REGS	
4 TIC INTR REG	- ENTER 'Y' TO DUMP TIC RAM ==> _
5 DPLY STORAGE	
6 DUMP	
7 DPLY SCB,SSB	
8 DPLY PARM BLKS	
9 TIC ERR STAT	

Figure. 11-10. TIC Dump Request Panel

## TIC Dump Area

This function dumps all installed RAM of the selected TIC. The following information is also provided:

- Related TRM registers (LID base, data buffer, TIC state, diagnostics, IR/BR, level 1 error status)
- TIC interrupt register
- Init and Open parameter blocks
- TIC token-ring Status
- TIC adapter check status

Four TIC dumps may be stored on the CHGTRSS dump file on the disk.

The TIC dumps are assigned to a free "slot" in the CHGTRSS dump file in the order they are taken. There is no static allocation of TIC dumps to the CHGTRSS file.

The sector in the CHGTRSS dump file is described below.

1	TRSS Dump Header
2	TIC Dump 1 – RAM
10	TIC Dump 1 – Header
11	TIC Dump 2 – RAM
19	TIC Dump 2 – Header
20	TIC Dump 3 – RAM
28	TIC Dump 3 – Header
29	TIC Dump 4 – RAM
37 (last)	TIC Dump 4 – Header

The TRSS dump header is necessary to indicate the presence, time-stamp, and location of a TIC dump within CHGTRSS.

If all TIC dump areas in CHGTRSS are full, the **TIC dump areas full** panel is displayed, and you are given a choice of overwriting the oldest of the four existing TIC dumps or cancelling the dump request (see Figure 11-11).

1 SELECT	DUMP TIC STORAGE
2 CONNECT/DISC	
3 TRM REGS	THE TIC DUMP AREA IS FULL.
4 TIC INTR REG	TYPE C TO OVERWRITE THE OLDEST
5 DPLY STORAGE	TIC DUMP, OTHERWISE PRESS SEND ==> _
6 DUMP	
7 DPLY SCB,SSB	OLDEST TIC DUMP IS TRA:02 TIC :1
8 DPLY PARM BLKS	DATE/TIME: 08:08:87 13:45:33
9 TIC ERR STAT	<mm dd yy hh mm ss>

Figure 11-11. TIC Dump Areas Full Panel (Sample)

---

## Display TIC SCB and SSB

This function requires NTRI to be online.

Use this function to display the addresses and contents of the SCB and SSB of the selected TIC.

### Procedure

1. Select the TRA (as explained page 11-3), then press PF1 (move to SIA),
2. Type 7 in the S/A, then press *SEND*.
3. Select TIC #1 or #2 (as explained page 11-7).

The **display TIC SCB, SSB (from NTRI)** panel is displayed (see Figure 11-12).

**Note:** Message NTRI OFFLINE: FUNCTION IGNORED appears if NTRI is not online.

1 SELECT	DISPLAY TIC SCB, SSB (FROM NTRI)	
2 CONNECT/DISC	SCB ADDRESS:	nnnnnn
3 TRM REGS	CONTENTS:	nnnn
4 TIC INTR REG		nnnn
5 DPLY STORAGE		nnnn
6 DUMP		
7 DPLY SCB,SSB	SSB ADDRESS:	nnnnnn
8 DPLY PARM BLKS	CONTENTS:	nnnn
9 TIC ERR STAT		nnnn
		nnnn
	PF5: REFRESH	

Figure 11-12. Display TIC SCB and SSB

Press *ATTN* (or *BREAK*) to stop refresh mode.

## Display TIC Parameter Blocks

This function requires NTRI to be online.

Use this function to display the contents of the 'Initialize' and 'Open' parameter blocks of the selected TIC.

### Procedure

1. Select the TRA (as explained page 11-3), then press PF1 (move to S/A),
2. Type 8 in the S/A, then press SEND,
3. Select TIC #1 or #2 (as explained page 11-7).

The first of two panels (**Initialize Parameter Block**) is displayed (see Figure 11-13).

**Note:** Message NTRI OFFLINE: FUNCTION IGNORED appears if NTRI is not online.

Press PF8 (forward) to display the second panel (**Open Parameter Block**) (see Figure 11-14).

DISPLAY TIC	
INITIALIZE PARAMETER BLOCK (FROM NTRI)	
1 SELECT	OPTIONS: nnnn DMA ABORT THRESH: nnnn
2 CONNECT/DISC	INTR VECT CMD: nn SCB ADDRESS: nnnnnnnn
3 TRM REGS	INTR VECT XMIT: nn SSB ADDRESS: nnnnnnnn
4 TIC INTR REG	INTR VECT RCV: nn
5 DPLY STORAGE	INTR VECT RING: nn
6 DUMP	INTR VECT SCB: nn
7 DPLY SCB,SSB	INTR VECT ADPT: nn
8 DPLY PARM BLKS	RCV BURST SIZE: nnnn
9 TIC ERR STAT	XMIT BURST SIZE: nnnn
PF8: FORWARD	

Figure 11-13. TIC Initialize Parameter Block Display

DISPLAY TIC	
OPEN PARAMETER BLOCK (FROM NTRI)	
1 SELECT	OPEN OPTIONS: nnnn BUFFER SIZE: nnnn
2 CONNECT/DISC	NODE ADDRESS: nnnnnnnnnnnn EXT RAM START: nnnn
3 TRM REGS	GROUP ADDRESS: nnnnnnnn EXT RAM END: nnnn
4 TIC INTR REG	FUNCT ADDRESS: nnnnnnnn XMIT BUF COUNT: nnnn
5 DPLY STORAGE	RCV LIST SIZE: nnnn PROD ID ADDR: nnnnnnnn
6 DUMP	XMIT LIST SIZE: nnnn
7 DPLY SCB,SSB	XMIT LIST CHAIN ADDR: nnnnnn
8 DPLY PARM BLKS	RCV LIST CHAIN ADDR: nnnnnn
9 TIC ERR STAT	
PF7: BACKWARD	

Figure 11-14. TIC Open Parameter Block Display



## Display Token-Ring Status

This function requires NTRI to be online.

Use this function to display the token-ring status of the selected TIC.

### Procedure

1. Select the TRA (as explained page 11-3),
2. Type 9 in the *S/A*, then press *SEND*,
3. Select TIC #1 or #2 (as explained page 11-7).

The **token-ring status (from NTRI)** panel is displayed (see Figure 11-15).

**Note:** Message NTRI OFFLINE: FUNCTION IGNORED appears if NTRI is not online.

1 SELECT	TOKEN RING STATUS (FROM NTRI)	
2 CONNECT/DISC		
3 TRM REGS	SIGNAL LOSS:	n
4 TIC INTR REG	HARD ERROR:	n
5 DPLY STORAGE	SOFT ERROR:	n
6 DUMP	TRANSMIT BEACON:	n
7 DPLY SCB,SSB	LOBE WIRE FAULT:	n
8 DPLY PARM BLKS	AUTO-REMOVAL ERROR 1:	n
9 TIC ERR STAT	REMOVE RECEIVED:	n
	COUNTER OVERFLOW:	n
	SINGLE STATION:	n
	RING RECOVERY:	n
	PF5: REFRESH	

Figure 11-15. Token-Ring Status Panel

## TRSS Modes (TRA modes and TIC Modes)

TRSS functions are based on the concept of modes.

The TRA must be in one of three modes: DISCONNECT, CONNECT, or UNKNOWN. (These modes are explained in "TRA Connection and Disconnection" on page 11-4 and in "Machine Status Area" on page 1-20).

### TIC Modes

Each of the two possible TICs must be in one of seven modes (as reported by NTRI):

- IDLE: The TIC has not yet been reset by NTRI.
- RESET: The TIC has been reset by NTRI but not yet initialized.
- INITIALIZED: The TIC has been initialized but not yet OPEN or DISABLED. Initialization parameters have been passed to the TIC by NTRI.
- OPEN: The TIC has been inserted into the token-ring and is in normal operation. Open parameters have been passed and receive and transmit operations have been started.
- CLOSED: The TIC has been opened since initialization, but has since been closed (by the host).
- FROZEN: An error was detected and the following actions were taken by NTRI:
- Interrupts from this TIC are disabled.
  - DMA from this TIC is disabled.
  - The TIC is reset.
- DISABLED: The associated TRA has been disconnected by MOSS. NTRI will send no PIO to this TIC.
- (blank): There is no TIC mode if NTRI is not online.

The TIC mode is derived from the NTRI MAC layer status obtained from NTRI. The following table gives the correspondence.

Medium Access Control (MAC) Status	TIC Mode
Idle	Idle
TIC resetting hard	Idle
TIC resetting soft	Idle
Initialization list transfer	Reset
Initialized	Initialized
Open started	Initialized
Receive initialization	Initialized
Transmit initialization	Initialized
Started	Open
Transmit in progress	Open
Close in progress	Open
Closed	Closed
Frozen	Frozen
Disconnected	Disabled

Figure 11-16. NTRI MAC Status and Corresponding TIC Mode.

---

## Chapter 12. Additional Functions

In this chapter we will see the panels and procedures for the following functions:

- IPL the 3720 and IML a scanner; see page 12-2
- Display Machine Level Table (MLT); see page 12-5
- Using the diskette mode; see page 12-6
- Running the Stand-alone Link Tests (SALT); see page 12-7
- Taking dumps (MOSS, scanner, TIC); see page 12-9
- Managing the passwords; see page 12-13
- The file transfer to host (and print); see page 12-14
- The wrap tests; see page 12-16

---

## 3720 IPL and One-Scanner IML

### 3720 IPL

Use the IPL functions to IPL the CCU and scanners of the 3720.

Options are available to the CE only:

- Normal IPL
- Step-by-step
- Bypass phase 1

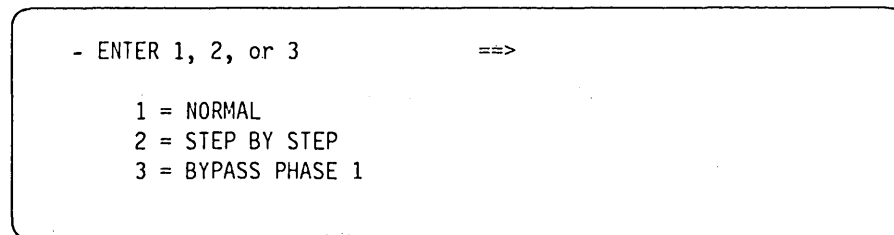
To perform any of the IPL functions, the MOSS must be running (MOSS-ALONE status).

### Requesting the 3720 IPL

You must first display the **3720 function menu** panel (first panel displayed after you entered the maintenance password on the **Password** panel, or if you used the MOSS CE switch 3).

- Type *IPL* (for 3720 IPL) in the *S/A*, then press *SEND*.

The **IPL 3720** panel will be displayed (see Figure 12-1).



```
- ENTER 1, 2, or 3      ==>

1 = NORMAL
2 = STEP BY STEP
3 = BYPASS PHASE 1
```

Figure 12-1. 3720 IPL Function Selection Panel

### Selecting the Options for 3720 IPL

**Note:** The options are available only if a maintenance password is entered (or the MOSS CE switch 3 was ON).

- Enter 1, 2, or 3 at the cursor location to select the corresponding IPL option, then press *SEND*.

**Notes:**

1. The only functions that can be performed while IPLing the CCU are the CCU functions.
2. No CCU function can be selected before IPL phase 2 (hex display = FF2).
3. If a previous IPL or IML request is running, you must:
  - Wait until the IPL or IML is completed, then terminate by using *T*, or
  - Cancel the IPL using *T*before selecting another IPL or IML.
4. The IPL/IML is canceled if one of the following occurs before the IPL/IML is complete.
  - Terminate (*T*) is entered in *S/A*.
  - The operator console is switched from normal mode to test mode.

- The other operator console is selected.
- The operator console is powered off.

## IPL Phases

During 3720 IPL, with any options selected, the IPL phases are indicated on:

- The third line of the MSA (fields r to x)
- The hex display on the control panel

(See the *3720 Extended Services* manual, for details.)

To stop the IPL during a phase, press *PF4*. To resume, press *PF5*.

To terminate the IPL function, when the *IPL COMPLETE* message is displayed in the MSA, use Terminate (T).

### Normal IPL (Option 1)

Use this option to normally IPL the CCU and IML the scanners. When you select 1 in the 3720 IPL menu, the IPL starts immediately.

The following message is displayed while the IPL is in progress:

CCU AND SCANNER IPL

### Step-by-Step IPL (Option 2)

Use this option to IPL the 3720 in step-by-step mode. When you select 2 in the 3720 IPL menu, the IPL stops automatically at the start of each phase, so that you may take appropriate action, such as executing a CCU function.

To continue, press *PF5*.

The following message is displayed while the IPL is in progress:

STEP-BY-STEP IPL

### Bypass Phase 1 (Option 3)

Use this option to IPL the CCU without CCU test and initialization, and IML the scanners. When you select 3 in the 3720 IPL menu, the IPL bypasses phase 1 and stops automatically at the beginning of the following phases.

The following message is displayed while the IPL is in progress:

BYPASS PHASE 1 IPL

### One-Scanner IML

Use this function to IML only one scanner.

**Warning:** Before IMLing a scanner, stop all the lines on that scanner, using the NCP facilities.

To perform scanner IML functions, the MOSS must be running (MOSS-ALONE status).

## Requesting One Scanner IML

You must first display the **3720 function menu** panel. This panel is displayed after you have entered the maintenance password on the **Password** panel, or after you use the MOSS CE Switch 3.

- Type **/S** (for IML one SCANNER) in the **S/A**, then press **SEND**.

The **IML One Scanner** panel will be displayed (see Figure 12-2).

- ENTER:

THE SCANNER NUMBER PRECEDED BY S (S1 TO S4)  
OR  
THE LINE ADDRESS (0 to 63)                      ==>

Figure 12-2. IML One Scanner Function Selection Panel

## Selecting the Scanner for One Scanner IML

1. Enter **S** followed by the scanner number (1 to 4):  
For the 3720, the scanner number is 1  
For the 3721-1, the scanner number is 3  
For the 3721-2, the scanner number is 3 or 4
2. Press **SEND**.

## IML Termination

When the IML is complete, the following message is displayed:

IML FOR SCANNER XX COMPLETED - SCANNER IS CONNECTED

Type **T** in the **S/A** to terminate the One-Scanner IML function when the IML COMPLETE message is displayed in the MSA.

---

## Machine Level Table (MLT) Display

The *MLT display* function allows displaying IBM-provided information related to the microcode and control program, namely:

- The identifier of the control program version (NCP, EP, ...) loaded into the CCU
- The Engineering Change (EC) level of the microcode
- The identifier of the last applied microcode fix (MCF) and the date at which it was applied.

**Note:** The machine serial number, the machine type, and the model type are permanently displayed on all MOSS panels (they also appear on the files printed at the host, or on the remote PC printer).

### Origin of MLT Information

The MLT application reads in sector 1 of the MOSS disk the information concerning:

- The level of the microcode (EC level and associated wording).
- The identification and date of last MCF applied.
- The control program loaded in the CCU, that is, if the status in the MSA is MOSS ONLINE (as a result of an IPL that has been completed).

**Note:** If there is no control program loaded in the CCU, (status in the MSA is MOSS ALONE), the following message is displayed:  
NO CONTROL PROGRAM LOADED.

### Displaying the MLT

- Type *MLT* in the *S/A* of the **3720 function menu** panel, then press *SEND*.

The **Machine Level Table** panel is displayed (see Figure 12-3).

**Note:** To list the microcode fixes that have been applied, use the **MCF** function, see Chapter 6.

MSA lines 1-3

CUSTOMER ID: .....	3720-1	SERIAL NUMBER: xxxxxxx
FUNCTION ON SCREEN: MACHINE LEVEL TABLE		
CONTROL PROGRAM ID: EP	VMSPAR14	VERSION4
EC LEVEL : 123456E		
LAST APPLIED MCF : M180A011 ON 09/11/85		

Figure 12-3. Machine Level Table Display Panel (Sample)

The Machine Level Table can only be displayed, **NOT UPDATED**.

---

## Diskette Mode

This mode is a temporary recovery facility offered to the customer in case of hard disk unavailability. Its usage lasts only the time needed by the service personnel to repair the fault.

If you press the **Function Start** switch while the **Function Select** switch is in the *Diskette Mode* rotary position, a full IPL of the machine occurs (MOSS IML, CCU IPL, and scanner IML) using the PRIMARY diskette exclusively.

At the end of CCU IPL, the MOSS state is the following:

- No LOGON is required, no machine status area, no menu displayed on screen, no functions are available to the operator (keyboard locked). Only a warning is displayed: DISKETTE MODE: NO FUNCTION AVAILABLE.
- Diskette files are *read-only* (except DUMP files for CCU local store registers, and CCU Roll-in/Roll-out areas for auto-IPLs). This allows keeping the disk as the only reference.

At the end of IML, MOSS is in MOSS OFFLINE state (or MOSS ALONE).

- No BER logging takes place.
- No dump (MOSS, scanner, or TIC) is possible (manual or automatic), and no file transfer to host (dumps are on disk).
- Using this rotary position with CE switch 3 set performs a MOSS IML ONLY, with the IBM panel available. This may be necessary for some service actions such as hard disk repair and re-initialization.

**Note:** Do not forget that not all functions are on the PRIMARY diskette, and that most data files are not meaningful.

The LOGON process is bypassed in diskette mode.



---

## Stand-Alone Link Tests (SALT)

The stand-alone link tests, also called "link tests", are used to test:

- The link between two communication controllers
- The link between a 3720 and an SDLC terminal

The link tests consist of two programs:

- The link test requester (REQ), for use in the requester 3720, and
- The link test responder (RESP), for use in the responder 3720.

Both programs are recorded on the controller disk. They destroy the control program when they are loaded and run in stand-alone mode instead of control program mode.

The link tests are particularly useful for link-attached controllers when the control program cannot be loaded over the normal IPL link.

The link tests are loaded from the 3720 console using the *LK* (LINK TEST) function of the **3720 function menu** panel. The detailed procedures are described in the *3720 Extended Services* manual.

### Testing an INN Link

The link tests can be used to check an intermediate network node (INN) link between two communications controllers such as the IBM 3720, IBM 3725, and IBM 3705. The INN link is an SDLC non-switched or manually switched line.

The link to be tested must be defined as an IPL port in the IPL port table of the requester controller, and also in the responder controller (if the link tests are to be used as responder).

See details in *3720 Extended Services* manual.

## SDLC Terminals Exerciser Without CP Loaded

### Test Purpose

The link tests can also be used to exercise SDLC terminals provided that they:

- Reply correctly to SDLC test frames (see *3720 Extended Services* manual for SDLC test frame description)
- Do not require the following options:
  - Transmit two flags before frame
  - Transmit flags between frames
  - Transmit with new SYNC
- Do not use the 3720 internal clock

The lines to be exercised must be defined as IPL ports in the IPL PORT table. They should be removed from the IPL PORT table at end of test. Also, if customer-defined IPL ports have been overridden, they must be redefined.

### Procedure

1. Start as follows:
  - a. Use the *CDF* functions to create (if not already done) and update the CDF, and check the clocking, as required.

- b. Record the customer IPL ports manually, or via the printer, if installed, to be able to re-establish them after the test.
2. Define the lines to be tested as IPL ports in the link IPL PORT table according to the terminal and line characteristics (see *3720 Extended Services*).

**Notes:**

- a. Up to eight lines can be defined in the IPL PORT table. If more than eight lines have to be tested, define the first eight in the IPL PORT table and test them as described below. Then, define new lines by updating the IPL PORT table and restart the procedure at step 3.
  - b. If you override an existing customer IPL port, do not forget to re-establish it after the test.
3. Proceed as follows:

- a. Load the link test program requester in the CCU (see the *3720 Extended Services* manual).

**Warning:** The link tests destroy the control program that may be running in the CCU. In such a case, before loading the link tests, ask the customer to vary off-line the lines and channels connected to the controller.

- b. Disable all the channel ports at the control panel.
  - c. Request the LINK TEST REQUESTER (function *LOQ* of the **3720 function menu** panel).
  - d. Request the LINK TEST function (function *LT* of the **3720 function menu** panel).
4. Be sure that the terminal to be tested is powered on.

Also, in case of a programmable terminal, be sure that the terminal is initialized (refer to appropriate terminal documentation) and that its host communication link is active.

5. Perform the test by providing the required information (see the *3720 Extended Services* manual) considering the following notes:

**Notes:**

- a. The responder address is the address of the terminal.
  - b. The data pattern to be used for the test should not be longer than the size of the terminal buffer, as the terminal will reflect back only the data it is able to receive. Thus, for terminals with a buffer size less than 128 bytes, the use of the personal pattern option is recommended.
  - c. The personal pattern option allows defining an empty pattern (containing no data). This facility must be considered for terminals that are not able to reflect back the received data (or that send back their own data).
6. When the test is completed for a given line, return to step 4 to perform the test on another line, or to step 2 if new IPL ports must be defined.

**Warning:** Never forget to reload the link test program each time the IPL PORT table is updated.

## Error Reporting

When running in investigation mode, the test stops on the first error encountered and error information is displayed.

Status codes (SCF, LCS, SES) may also be displayed along with messages (see the *3720 Extended Services* manual).

---

## Taking a Dump

You may dump a scanner, a TIC, or MOSS itself on the MOSS disk.

An automatic NCP dump may occur.

## NCP Dump

The NCP dump is the contents of the CCU storage transferred to the 3720 MOSS disk buffer area in a file named CHGDMP1.

With the use of System Support Program (SSP) facilities the dump buffer area of the MOSS disk may be transferred to the host for printing.

This dump **can be deleted only from the host**.

Field *n* of the machine status area (MSA) on the MOSS panel will display DUMP while an NCP dump is in progress.

An NCP dump may only be started automatically.

## Automatic NCP Dump

The automatic NCP dump occurs when:

- A CCU hardcheck is detected
  1. An automatic IPL is started.
  2. The NCP dump is taken
  3. An alert or an alarm is sent at the end of the IPL
    - Alarm A31 3720 REIPL SUCCESSFUL - DUMP AVAILABLE ON DISK
    - Alarm A34 and A35 3720 REIPL FAILED - DUMP (NOT) AVAILABLE ON DISK (dump available A34, or no dump A35)
    - Alert A31 or A7 HARDWARE ERROR: COMMUNICATION CONTROLLER RE-IPLLED (dump taken A31, no dump A7)
- An ABEND is issued (except 703)
  1. An automatic IPL is started.
  2. The NCP dump is taken
  3. An alert or an alarm is sent at the end of the IPL
    - Alarm A31 3720 REIPL SUCCESSFUL - DUMP AVAILABLE ON DISK
    - Alarm A34 or A35 3720 REIPL FAILED - DUMP (NOT) AVAILABLE ON DISK (dump available A34, or no dump A35)
    - Alert A32 and A8 SOFTWARE ERROR: COMMUNICATION CONTROLLER RE-IPLLED (dump taken A31, or no dump A8)

## MOSS Dump

A MOSS dump is the contents of MOSS microcode storage (see MOSS storage layout in the *Maintenance Information Reference* manual) transferred to the disk buffer area in a file named CHGDMP.

With the use of System Support Program (SSP) facilities, the dump buffer area of the MOSS disk may be transferred to the host for printing.

Using a PC, the dump buffer area can be transmitted to a support center for analysis (see Appendix A, "MOSS File Transfer/Print from PC" on page A-1).

A MOSS dump may be started automatically or manually.

## Automatic MOSS Dump

The automatic MOSS dump is started when MOSS abends taking a MOSS level 0 interrupt. A MOSS re-IML occurs after this dump. An A1 or A2 alert is then sent to the host. An A1 alert is sent by the NCP to the host if the MOSS cannot successfully re-IML before a re-IML retry threshold is reached. An A2 alert is sent by the MOSS to the host if the MOSS is successfully IMLed. If another MOSS automatic dump is attempted before a previous dump is either transferred or manually deleted, the previous dump remains protected and the following one is lost. This previous dump may have been taken manually or automatically.

## Manual MOSS Dump

The MOSS must be set OFF-LINE. Failure to do so results in a 3720 system abend.

The manual MOSS dump is started by placing the **Function Select** switch in the **MOSS DUMP** position and pressing the **Function Start** switch on the control panel. Successful completion of the manual dump is indicated by the hex display D00. MOSS should then be manually re-IMLed using the control panel function MOSS IML.

The manual MOSS dump always overlays any previous dump on the MOSS disk.

You can perform this procedure while the NCP is loaded and active without affecting NCP operation.

Performing a MOSS dump automatically places MOSS OFF-LINE.

To bring MOSS ONLINE after the dump is completed, use the CCU function **MON**, on the **CCU Function Menu** panel.

## Scanner Dump

A scanner dump is the contents of one scanner microcode storage transferred to the disk buffer area in a file named CHHDMP.

With the use of System Support Program (SSP) facilities the dump buffer area of the MOSS disk may be transferred to the host for printing.

Field *n* of the machine status area (MSA) on the MOSS panel will display DUMP while a scanner dump is in progress.

Using a PC, the scanner dump can be transmitted to a support center for analysis.

A scanner dump may be started automatically or manually.

### Automatic Scanner Dump

The automatic scanner dump is started whenever a condition exists that generates a SCANNER xx ERROR alarm.

If the auto re-IML fails, the scanner must be manually re-IMLed; the *3720 Extended Services* manual gives the procedure for scanner alarms. If another scanner dump is attempted by this automatic method before a previous dump is either transferred to the host or manually deleted, the previous dump remains protected and the following one is lost. This previous dump may have been taken manually or automatically.

Automatic scanner dump can also be started at NCP request by a specific command (F2). (Contact your Programming Service Representative.)

### Manual Scanner Dump

A scanner dump is disruptive to the scanner and its link.

"Dump a Scanner" on page 4-5 explains how to request a dump for a selected scanner.

The scanner must be re-IMLed using a MOSS function, such as *ONE-SCANNER IML* (see "One-Scanner IML" on page 12-3).

If a scanner dump is attempted by the manual method before a previous dump is either transferred to the host or manually cleared (deleted), a message is displayed that the scanner dump file is not empty. If you respond with a *C* to this message, the previous dump is cleared and the following dump is taken.

The previous scanner dump may also be manually deleted (cleared) using the DUMP DISPLAY/DELETE (DD) function of the **3720 Function Menu** panel. For details, see "Deleting a File from MOSS Disk" on page 5-12.

## TIC Dump

A TIC dump is the contents of one TIC microcode storage transferred to the disk buffer area in a file named CHGTRSS.

Up to 4 TIC dumps may reside on the CHGTRSS file. The last TIC dump takes the space of the first free area (0 to 3), or the area of the last TIC dump deleted.

With the use of System Support Program (SSP) facilities the CHGTRSS dump file may be transferred to the host for printing.

Transferring the CHGTRSS dump to the host automatically deletes the whole CHGTRSS file.

Using a PC, the TIC dump can be transmitted to a support center for analysis.

A TIC dump may be started automatically or manually.

### Automatic TIC Dump

The automatic TIC dump is started whenever a condition exists that generates alarm 29.

If the CHGTRSS dump file is full, the dump is lost. To avoid this, transfer and/or delete the TIC dump file from time to time.

### Manual TIC Dump

Since a TRA must be disconnected before a manual dump request, a TIC dump is disruptive to the TRA and its links.

"Dump TIC Storage" on page 11-11 explains how to request a dump for a selected TIC.

If all TIC dump areas in CHGTRSS are full, the **TIC dump areas full** panel is displayed, and you are given a choice of overwriting the oldest of the four existing TIC dumps or cancelling the dump request (see Figure 11-11 on page 11-12).

The previous TIC dumps may also be manually deleted (cleared) using the DUMP DISPLAY/DELETE (DD) function of the **3720 Function Menu** panel. For details, see "Deleting a File from MOSS Disk" on page 5-12.

---

## Password and Customer Identification Management

This function, which is normally performed by the customer, is explained in detail in the *3720 Extended Services* manual.

### Procedure

You must first display the **3720 function menu** panel (first panel displayed after you entered the **customer** password on the **Password** panel).

- Type *P* (for **PASSWORD**) in the *S/A*, then press *SEND*.

The **password management logon** panel will be displayed.

To access the password functions, you must from this panel:

1. Type the *management* password.

**Note:** When using this function for the first time, type the *default* customer password given to you by IBM.

2. Press *SEND*.

The **password management selection** panel will be displayed.

From this panel the user who knows the management password will be able to:

- Activate, deactivate, update, and display all 3720 passwords.

These passwords are:

- The management password
- The customer user's password
- The maintenance (service) password

- Display and reset the logon attempt counters.

The logon attempt counters will record how many unsuccessful or unauthorized attempts have been made to log onto MOSS using the various passwords.

- Create or modify the customer identification.

This identification is recorded in the MLT and displayed on all MOSS panels.

---

## File Transfer and Print at Host Location

The 3720 files that can be transferred are:

- NCP dump
- MOSS dump
- Scanner dump
- TRSS dump
- Configuration data file (CDF)
- Microcode fixes (MCF or patches)
- Machine load table (MLT)
- Line description file (LDF)
- BER file (described in the *Maintenance Information Reference* manual, in the 'BER' chapter)
- Cataloged control program procedures

To print the 3720 files listed above, you must:

- Transfer them to the host, or
- Transfer them to the support function, using the remote application (see Appendix A, MOSS File Transfer/Print from PC).

**Note:** The NCP dump cannot be transferred using the remote application.

### Transfer to the Host

The dump transfer to the host can be done only from the host, using dump host facilities.

Functions at the host are used to transfer the dump files from the MOSS disk to the host and also to print them. These host functions are described in *Advanced Communication Functions for Network Control Program and System Support Programs for the 3720 Diagnosis Guide*, SC30-3181.

When a dump is transferred to the host, it is deleted automatically from the dump buffer of the disk (except for the NCP dump, the deletion of which requires an additional VTAM command). The disk is then ready to receive another dump if necessary.

### Transfer to the Support Function

You may have to transmit a dump file to the support function using the remote application running on an IBM-PC. Appendix A, MOSS File Transfer/Print from PC explains in detail how to use this application for file transfer.

When a dump is transferred to the support function, it has to be deleted manually from the dump buffer of the MOSS disk. To manually delete a dump from the MOSS disk, use the MOSS utility program function *DD* (Dump Display/Delete). See "Deleting a File from MOSS Disk" on page 5-12 for the complete procedure required to delete a file.

This manual deletion procedure may be used at any time and deletes whichever file is entered, regardless of any other factors. Be careful not to delete a file that may be needed and has not been saved.



## **Receiving Files from Support Function**

You may have to receive a patch or an MCF file. Appendix A, MOSS File Transfer/Print from PC explains in detail how to use this application to send a file from IBM-PC to MOSS disk.

## **Printing MOSS Files at the Host Location**

When files are transmitted to the host, they are formatted so as to be printed by the host utility programs

These host programs are described in *Advanced Communication Functions for Network Control Program and System Support Programs for the 3720 Diagnosis Guide*, SC30-3181.

The printing format depends on the file being processed:

The *3720 Maintenance Information Reference* manual gives file printout samples and, if necessary, the layout of some records, as well as a detailed description of the various fields.

## Wrap Tests Controlled from the MOSS

The 3720 *Maintenance Information Reference* manual shows the different wrap test possibilities controlled from the host, on the communication link, with the progression of testing procedures from the TSS to the terminal.

Wrap tests performed during diagnostics are explained on pages 3-4 and 3-4.

The following wrap tests may be controlled from MOSS:

- Wrap tests at tailgate (also referred to as *Wrap Block/Wrap Cable*)
- Wrap tests at modem level
- Wrap tests at NTT cable level
- Internal LIC wrap

These wrap tests are part of the line functions and are described in the 3720 *Extended Services* manual.

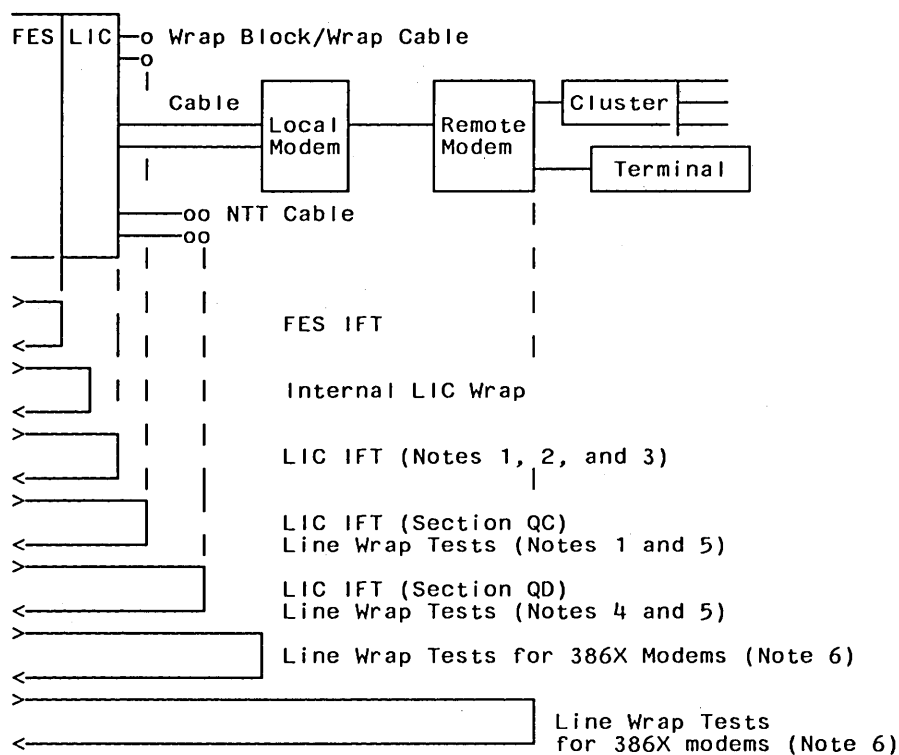


Figure 12-4. Wrap Tests Controlled from the MOSS

### Notes:

1. A line position can be plugged with a line cable, or be without a line cable, or can be plugged with a wrap block (LIC type 1, 2, 4A, or 4B), or with a wrap cable (LIC type 3). The CDF for each line must be updated accordingly when running the diagnostics.

When the TSS IFTs are run, the hardware for a selected line is:

- a. Tested up to the LIC drivers if the line cable is present.
- b. Tested up to the LIC and ICC card level for a line without cable.
- c. Fully tested if a wrap block or a wrap cable is present on the selected line. Plugging a wrap block or wrap cable and updating the CDF automatically selects the manual intervention section QC when diagnostics are running

2. During LIC wrap mode operation, the transmit data line and the control lines are not deactivated at the modem interface.
3. Although there is no user-activated test, an "echo-check" mechanism (inline) checks the transmitted data in wrap mode.
4. For selection of the NTT manual intervention routine QD, refer to "Wrap Test during Diagnostics for Japan Only" on page 3-4.
5. In these wrap modes, the clocking is taken from the 480-Hz clock. Therefore, an error such as an overrun, detected at operational speed, might not occur at the above testing speed.
6. If the cable is NTT with the connector switch set to "operate", the test indicator (TI) signal is not forwarded to the connected modem, so that the received pattern differs from the expected one.

## Token-Ring Wrap Tests

There are two types of *pseudo* wrap test performed for the token-ring:

- The NCP/Token-ring Interface (NTRI) wrap test: the internal lobe media test.

Under NCP/TRI, a wrap test is performed at each TIC open command processing, as the first step before inserting itself into the ring. The TIC internal lobe media test, tests the ring up to and including the local IBM 8228 Multi-station access unit or equivalent (the 8228 is a wiring concentrator).

It also tests the ring up to the point where it is unplugged before the 8228 (such as the tailgate or the wall connector).

The lobe media test is only invoked at the open command (not at the reset or initialization command).

Note that a disconnected cable during a lobe media test will show a lobe wire fault in the *TRSS* function (token-ring status) and in the *TRI* function.

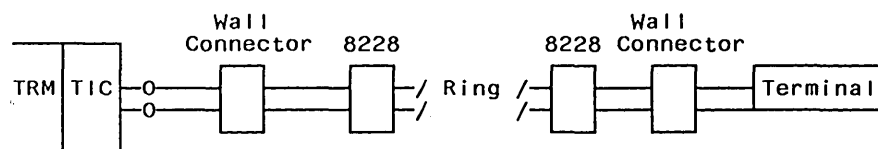
When a lobe wire fault is detected, the TIC will be frozen and the status will remain unchanged until the next open is issued.

- The TRSS diagnostic test: TIC lobe test (TG01).

The *3720 Diagnostic Descriptions* manual, SY33-2042, explains all TRSS diagnostic routines.

During the TG01 diagnostic routine, a wrap test is performed up to and including the 8228 or up to the point where it is unplugged before the 8228 (such as the tailgate or the wall connector).

**Note:** The open command issued by TG01 runs only the lobe test, not the entire OPEN process; a lobe wire fault is not detected.





---

## Appendix A. MOSS File Transfer/Print from PC

### Table Of Contents

General Overview	A-2
Remote Assistance Concept	A-2
Hardware Requirements	A-2
Software Requirements	A-3
Transferring MCFs from VM to 3720 EC diskette via a PC/AT	A-4
Transferring MCFs from VM to PC then to MOSS	A-5
How to Select a File Transfer/Print Function	A-6
File Naming	A-6
Accessing the File Transfer Selection Panel	A-10
File Transfer PF Keys	A-10
Selecting the File to Be Transferred	A-11
Receiving a File from MOSS	A-12
Selecting the File you Want to Receive	A-12
File Transfer Execution Sample	A-15
Receiving a MOSS Dump	A-16
Receive MOSS Dump Transfer, Execution Sample	A-17
Receiving a Scanner Dump	A-19
Receiving TRSS Dumps	A-21
Sending an MCF File from PC to 3720	A-23
File Printing Application	A-25
Application Description	A-25
File Printing Procedure	A-25
Selecting the File you Want to Print	A-25
Printing a File	A-26
File Printing Execution Sample	A-27
Printing TRSS Dumps	A-28
Remote Application Description	A-30
Error Recovery	A-31
Data Transparency	A-31
Data Integrity	A-31
MOSS/PC Interface	A-32
General Information About the Protocol	A-32
PC Diskette File Sizing	A-33
Remote Assistance Application Messages	A-34

---

## General Overview

This application can be used by the remote maintenance only if:

- URSF/RETAIN is not available for the 3720.
- The function requested is not yet in URSF/RETAIN (such as file transfer from MOSS to remote terminal).

**Terminology:** For brevity, the IBM Personal Computer will be referred to as the PC.

This appendix explains how to transfer data between a 3720 and a PC connected to it as a console.

See "Accessing the File Transfer Selection Panel" on page A-10 for details on how to use the remote file transfer application.

"How to Select a File Transfer/Print Function" on page A-6 explains how to start the application.

"File Printing Application" on page A-25 gives more explanations on how to request a print of the transferred files.

"Transferring MCFs from VM to 3720 EC diskette via a PC/AT" on page A-4 explains how to transfer MCFs from VM to the PC located at the HCS.

## Remote Assistance Concept

The remote file transfer and print applications are part of the **3720 Remote Assistance** concept. This concept is built-up around an IBM Personal Computer connected to a 3720 through a switched line.

Running the 3101 emulation package, the PC is used as a normal 3720 console and allows an operator to perform all the MOSS functions. This facility is available to IBM only (remote support center).

Running built-in applications, the PC can receive and transmit data from/to the 3720 to which it is connected. Thus, most MOSS data become available at the central site:

- Configurations
- Technical Levels
- Microcode patches
- Error Logs
- ...

A file containing microcode fixes (MCF) can be sent from the PC to the MOSS disk.

All these files can be printed at the PC printer.

"Transferring MCFs from VM to PC then to MOSS" on page A-5 explains how to transfer MCFs from VM to a PC located at the HCS.

## Hardware Requirements

The following minimum configuration is required to run the *File Transfer Application*:

- One IBM Personal Computer 5150, 5160, or 5170.
- 128 kbytes of memory.

- One 320-kbyte diskette drive and associated diskette adapter. Reference: 1503810.
- A hard disk is required for receiving MCFs from VM.
- One IBM Personal Computer Asynchronous Communication Adapter Reference: 1502074. This adapter is selectable from 50 bps up to 9600 bps.
- One modem for remote connection (see "Modem (DCE) Requirements for the Remote Console" on page 1-9 for details)
- A cable for modem connection.

To run the *file print application*, an additional feature is requested:

- One graphic printer, IBM 5152.

## Software Requirements

- IBM Personal Computer Disk Operating System (DOS) at the current level. Reference: 6936836.
- IBM Personal Computer 3101 Emulation Control Program. Reference: 6024042.

For the transfer of MCFs, the application requires: a sub-directory named REMOTASS.DIR. This sub-directory will be used by the application (VM) that transfers MCFs to the PC. The MCF files on that sub-directory have the following names: xxxxx.MCF.

If there is no PC sub-directory whose name is REMOTASS.DIR, create one on the disk/diskette (a: in our example):

```
MKDIR a: REMOTASS.DIR
```

### Notes:

1. A hard disk is recommended as a reception unit.
2. Contact your local VM administrator for the implementation of programs associated with PCs when transferring files from/to VM.

## Transferring MCFs from VM to 3720 EC Diskette via a PC/AT

This section describes how to transfer an MCF file from the Host to a the 3720 EC 'secondary' diskette using *RAXDSK*.

### VM to 3720 EC Diskette Transfer Procedure (via PC/AT)

1. Logon to Host-VM.
2. Transfer the MCF file(s) (CHGMCF COP) from the Host to the PC hard disk:
  - If the PC is a PC/AT, use command E78 or HCPY (under PC DOS):  

```
E78copy h:CHGMCF COP f c:CHGMCF.COP /B
```

```
or hcopy h:CHGMCF COP f c:CHGMCF.COP /B
```

(h=Host, c=PC hard disk, f=file mode)
  - If the PC is a 3270/AT, use command RECEIVE:  

```
receive c:CHGMCF.COP h:CHGMCF COP f
```

(h=Host, c=PC hard disk, f=file mode)
3. Load the RAXDSK program from hard disk or HCS diskette.
4. Select option 2 (data set restore)
5. When 'enter data set name to be restored' appears: insert the 3720 EC 'secondary' diskette.
6. Type: CHGMCF and press *SEND*.

When the operation is successfully completed, the 3720 EC 'secondary' diskette is ready to be mailed, together with the associated EC 'primary' diskette to the Branch Office or to the Customer.

**Note:** You can check the last MCF level in the 'CHGMCF COP' file of the host-VM using edit or browse. The last MCF level appears on the first line of that file.



## Transferring MCFs from VM to PC then to MOSS

This section describes how to receive an MCF file from the Host for a later transfer to MOSS via the *RAXFER* program.

### VM-to-PC Transfer Procedure

All files to be transferred must first be stored in a PC-DOS sub-directory called REMOTASS.DIR.

For instance, if you received a CDF file whose name is 'C585515', you will find it on the PC disk(ette) in the sub-directory REMOTASS.DIR with the complete name: C585515.CDF (filename.filetype).

For MCF files, the same rule applies. If you receive a file from a Host, you must store it in the sub-directory REMOTASS.DIR with the filetype .MCF.

To receive an MCF file from a HOST to a PC disk(ette):

- Step 1. Logon to Host-VM.
- Step 2. Logon to PC DOS.
- Is there a PC sub-directory whose name is REMOTASS.DIR ?  
If yes, go to step 4.
- Step 3. Create the REMOTASS.DIR sub-directory on the disk/diskette (a: in our example).

**Note:** A hard disk is recommended as a reception unit.

```
MKDIR a: REMOTASS.DIR
```

- Step 4. Receive the file from the Host:
  - If the PC is a PC/AT, use E78 or HCOPY:  

```
HCOPY h: hostfname hostftype a: REMOTASS.DIR\pcfilename.MCF /b
```

  
or  

```
E78COPY h: hostfname hostftype a: REMOTASS.DIR\pcfilename.MCF /b
```
  - If the PC is a 3270/AT, use command receive:  

```
RECEIVE a: REMOTASS.DIR\pcfilename.MCF r:hostfname hostftype a1
```

  
(h: host, a: disk/diskette drive)
- Step 5. Logoff from Host-VM

From now on you can transfer this file to a 3270 MOSS using *RAXFER*.

**Note:** It is assumed that the whole MCF file is an EBCDIC-coded file (even for the EC-number).

### Application Environment

**Note:** Make sure that you have a directory called REMOTASS.DIR on your disk/diskette.

The PC runs the 3101 emulation under the DOS package.

The 3270 and the PC must be connected to run the *file transfer application*.

The file printing application is developed within the PC, and does not require a connection to MOSS.

The two PC applications (file transfer and file print) are on a single PC diskette.

Figure A-1 on page A-8 gives a general overview of the different applications.

---

## How to Select a File Transfer/Print Function

This function requires:

- The customer to agree to the remote connection.
- All other possible users of the MOSS to be *logged off*.
- The customer to give you the modem telephone number and the MOSS maintenance password.

### Remote Application Starting Procedure

1. Logon to MOSS as explained in "Remote Connection Procedure" on page 1-10.

From this time, your terminal has the same capabilities as the local 3101-like terminal.

**Note:** The file transfer application can only be called from the 3720 *function menu* panel, and no MOSS function should be active or pending.

2. Press ALT and PF10 simultaneously, then, when the emulator command line is displayed, type Q (for QUIT) to enter DOS mode.

**Note:** When in DOS, you are disconnected from the MOSS application.

3. Insert the diskette that contains the file transfer/print programs into the PC drive that is available.

4. Type the name of the function requested:

- d:RAXFER for file transfer
- d:RAXPRT for file print.

Where *d* is the identifier of the disk/diskette drive that contains the programs.

**Notes:**

- a. IPL should not be in progress while using the file transfer application.
- b. Although it may be possible to load and run the print file function while connected to the 3720, it is recommended to run the print function offline. (If online, the line remains connected during the print.)

The *remote assistance initialization* panel is displayed. and FILE TRANSFER INITIALIZATION IN PROGRESS is blinking.

If there is no error, the **file transfer selection** panel (RAXFER command) or the **file print selection** panel (RAXPRT command) is displayed.

**Note:** If an error occurs, PF9=End is displayed so that you may return to DOS by pressing PF9 (MOSS is not connected to the PC).

### File Naming

All the files transferred from the 3720 to the PC may be written on the diskette/disk attached to the PC. The operator will be asked for file names. The operator may enter a file name or let the system choose one.

- If entered by the operator, this name is a string of up to 8 characters.

In case of a name already defined, the operator is prompted to confirm or to change the entered name. (if confirmed, the new file overwrites the previous one.)

- If the operator does not want to enter a name, this file name is created by the system using the following rule:

- First character is a code that defines the file to be transferred:
  - 'C' for CDF
  - 'P' for PCH
  - 'Z' for MCF
  - 'B' for BER
  - 'L' for MLT
  - 'M' for MOSS Dump
  - 'S' for Scanner Dump
  - 'T' for TIC Dump
- The last 7 characters are the serial number of the current 3720 (displayed at the top right corner of the panel).

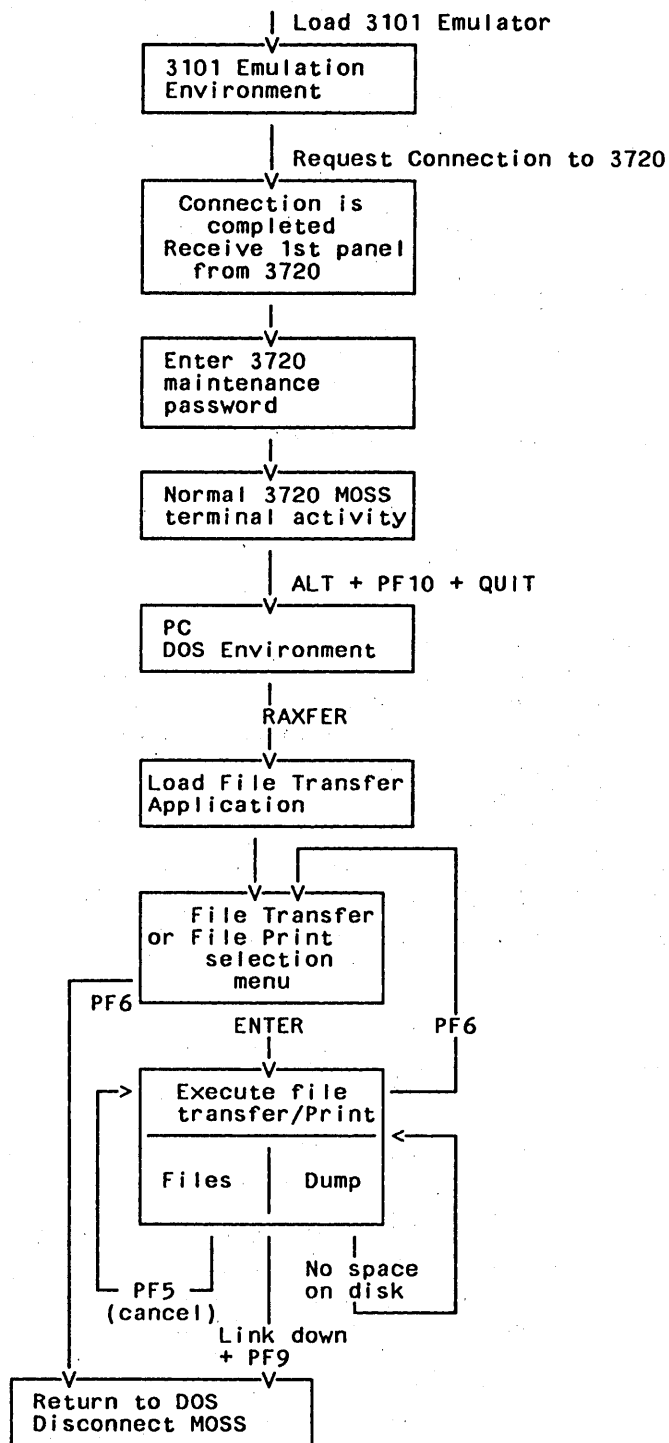


Figure A-1. General Overview

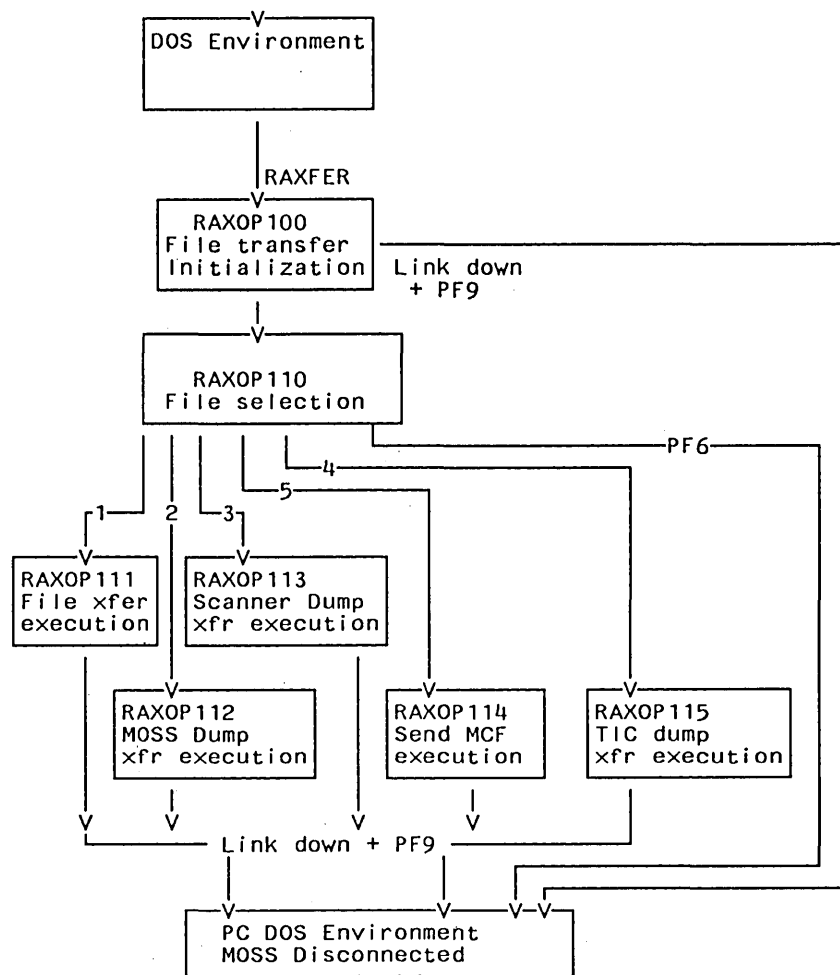


Figure A-2. Online Process Detailed Flow

## Accessing the File Transfer Selection Panel

When in 3720 console mode, press ALT and PF10 simultaneously, then, when the emulator command line is displayed, type Q (for QUIT) to enter DOS mode.

**Note:** When in DOS, you are disconnected from the MOSS application.

"How to Select a File Transfer/Print Function" on page A-6 gives more details concerning the activation of the data transfer application.

- Load the File transfer application by typing d:RAXFER (where d is the PC disk/diskette address on which the file transfer programs are located).

When the initialization ends successfully, the **file transfer selection** panel (see Figure A-3 on page A-12) is displayed.

## Error Processing

If for any reason (link down, MOSS unable to load file transfer application ...) this phase fails, one of the following error messages will be displayed

- 008 Link with 3720 down
- 024 Unable to load file transfer

FILE TRANSFER INITIALIZATION IN PROGRESS will stop blinking.

**Note:** If an error occurs, PF9=End is displayed so that you may return to DOS by pressing PF9 (MOSS is not connected to the PC).

## File Transfer PF Keys

- PF5 (CANCEL).

Used only to cancel a file transfer request, and to erase the file (or part of file) that has been transferred.

- PF6 (QUIT).

With PF6, you return to DOS, you are disconnected from MOSS, but **you can reconnect to MOSS**.

The reconnection sequence is the following:

1. Load the 3101 emulation program
2. Press PF1 twice (for refresh)
3. Wait until you are in 3720 console mode

- PF7 (FORWARD) and PF8 (BACKWARD) (used only in case of multipanel display).
- PF9 (END).

Pressing PF9 returns you to DOS, and disconnects you from MOSS.

PF9=END appears on the panel only in exceptional cases where the only possible action is an exit:

- MOSS does not answer, or there is an error on the line (message 035)
- The link with 3720x is down (message 008)

**Warning:** When you return to DOS, you are disconnected from the MOSS application.

## Selecting the File to Be Transferred

The **file transfer selection** panel (see Figure A-3 on page A-12) is displayed as soon as the initialization phase with the 3720 is completed.

The serial number of the 3720 currently connected is displayed at the top right corner of the panel,

To select the type of file you want to transfer:

- Enter 1 to **receive** from the 3720 one or more of the following files:
  - CDF (configuration data file)
  - BER (box event records)
  - MLT (machine level table)
  - PCH (patches)

If no error occurs, the **file transfer execution** panel (see Figure A-4 on page A-14) is displayed. What to do next is explained in "Receiving a File from MOSS" on page A-12.

- Enter 2 to **receive** the MOSS dump from the 3720.

The **receive MOSS dump transfer** panel (see Figure A-6 on page A-17) is displayed.

What to do next is explained in "Receiving a MOSS Dump" on page A-16.

- Enter 3 to **receive** the scanner dump from the 3720.

The **receive scanner dump transfer** panel (see Figure A-8 on page A-20) is displayed.

What to do next is explained in "Receiving a Scanner Dump" on page A-19.

- Enter 4 to **receive** the TRSS dump file from the 3720.

The **send MCF** panel (see Figure A-9 on page A-22) is displayed.

What to do next is explained in "Receiving TRSS Dumps" on page A-21.

- Enter 5 to **send** the MCF file to the 3720 (from PC to MOSS).

The **send MCF** panel (see Figure A-10 on page A-24) is displayed.

What to do next is explained in "Sending an MCF File from PC to 3720" on page A-23.

PF keys are explained on page A-10.

"Remote Assistance Application Messages" on page A-34 gives the explanation and user response for the messages that may be displayed.

```
rap110
```

3720 REMOTE ASSISTANCE  
FILE TRANSFER Version 1.0

Serial  
Number=xxxxxxx

.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....
..	..	....	.....
..	.....	.....	.....
..	.....	..	.....
..	..	....	..
.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....

Microcode (c) Copyright IBM Corp. 1986

- Select a file transfer option (1 to 5) and press ENTER key ==> 1

- 1 = Receive Files (CDF/BER/MLT/PCH)
- 2 = Receive MOSS Dump
- 3 = Receive Scanner dump
- 4 = Receive TRSS dumps
- 5 = Send MCF

PF6:Quit

## Receiving a File from MOSS

The **file transfer execution** panel (see Figure A-4 on page A-14) is displayed and the fields are filled with their default values:

## Selecting the File you Want to Receive

1. Entering Y in front of the listed files you want (default is N).
2. Changing, if necessary, the names of the files to be transferred.

You may then do one of the following:

The status field is blanked and the name checked for validity.



The current file is erased on the PC disk/diskette and is replaced by the file received.

3. Changing the diskette or disk drive (A, B, C or D) on which you want to receive the files (default is A).

### File Transfer Status

If the input is correct, the transfer starts, the part in process blinks, and the status displays the following:

IN PROGRESS: You have selected this part, and the transfer is in progress. The file name is blinking.

TRANSFERRED: The transfer is successfully completed for this selected part. It is now available on the selected PC disk/diskette.

CANCELED:

1. You have canceled the transfer by pressing the *PF5* key. The file that was being transferred is erased from the PC disk/diskette.
2. The cancel is due to a transmission error

EMPTY: The requested file is empty. No transfer takes place.

NOT TRANSF: The specified file is not transferred due to your cancel request during another file transfer.

### Canceling File Transfer

To cancel a file transfer, press *PF5*. The process will be stopped, the file in transfer is erased on the PC disk/diskette, its status field is set to CANCELED, and the status fields for all other files to be transferred are set to NOT TRANSF.

An example of the panel after pressing *PF5* during a transfer is shown in "File Transfer Execution Sample" on page A-15.

PF keys are explained on page A-10.

"Remote Assistance Application Messages" on page A-34 gives the explanation and user response for the messages that may be displayed.

### File Transfer Speed

The average time for each file transfer is:

CDF file: .3 min (1Kb)

MCF files: 5-6 min (27Kb)

BER file: 15 min (39Kb)

SCANNER dump: up to 40-45 min (up to 64 Kb)

MOSS dump: up to 200 min (up to 512Kb)

TRSS dump: 2-10 min (up to 17Kb)

rap111

3720 REMOTE ASSISTANCE  
FILE TRANSFER Version 1.0

Serial  
Number=xxxxxxx

- Select the file to be received (Y/N)
- Modify file name and disk/diskette address, if necessary
- Press ENTER

	Y/N	File name	Disk addr
Configuration Data File (CDF)	==> N	Cxxxxxxx	A
Box Error Record File (BER)	==> N	Bxxxxxxx	A
Machine Level Table (MLT)	==> N	Lxxxxxxx	A
Microcode Patches (PCH)	==> N	Zxxxxxxx	A

PF5:Cancel

PF6:Quit

<PF9:End>

Figure A-4. File Transfer Execution Panel

## File Transfer Execution Sample

The **file transfer execution** sample panel (see Figure A-5) display resumes the following actions:

- You have selected function 1 on the **file transfer selection** panel (Figure A-3 on page A-12).
- The 3720 serial number is: 3417903
- The default parameters for the file name and the PC disk/diskette address are not changed.
- The files to be transferred are:
  - CDF
  - BER
  - PCH
- You pressed **PF5** during BER file transfer.

rap111

3720 REMOTE ASSISTANCE  
FILE TRANSFER Version 1.0

Serial  
Number=xxxxxxx

- Select the file to be received (Y/N)

- Modify file name and disk/diskette address, if necessary

- Press ENTER

	Y/N	File name	Disk addr	
Configuration Data File (CDF)	==> Y	C3417903	A	TRANSFERRED
Box Error Record File (BER)	==> Y	B3417903	A	CANCELED
Machine Level Table (MLT)	==> N	L3417903	A	
Microcode Patch (PCH)	==> Y	Z3417903	A	NOT TRANSF

PF5:Cancel

PF6:Quit

<PF9:End>

Figure A-5. File Transfer, Execution Sample

---

## Receiving a MOSS Dump

You have selected function 2 on the **file transfer selection** panel (Figure A-3 on page A-12).

The **receive MOSS dump transfer** panel (see Figure A-6 on page A-17) is displayed and the fields are filled with their default values:

- The serial number of the 3720 currently connected is displayed at the top right corner of the panel.
- The PC disk/diskette address is set to *A*.
- The dump file name field is set to the name specified in "File Naming" on page A-6.
- The erase dump indicator is set to *N*.

Set this indicator to *Y* to erase the MOSS dump on the MOSS disk after a successful transfer.

- The status field (rightmost field for all files listed) is set to blanks.

### Selecting the Parts of the MOSS Dump you Want to Receive

You select the parts by:

1. Changing the PC disk/diskette address to B, C, or D (default is A).
2. Changing, if necessary, the name of the MOSS dump file.

If there already is a file with the same name on your PC disk/diskette, the corresponding status field (rightmost field in the lines), will display an error message.

3. Entering the 'from' address and 'to' address of each part of the dump you want to receive. The addresses must be in hexadecimal notation.

All the selected parts (1-8) must be separated. If an overlay area is found within the selected parts, an error message is displayed.

The 'from' and 'to' addresses are automatically justified on MOSS disk sector boundaries.

**Note:** MOSS dump valid address boundaries are 00400/7FFFF.

When multiple parts are requested, they must be entered in address sequence, and parts must be contiguous (for example: part 1, then part 2).

During the dump transfer, the operator is informed every time half a kbyte of dump data is transferred.

### File Transfer Status.

If the input is correct, the transfer starts, the part in progress blinks, and the status displays the following:

**IN PROGRESS:** You have selected this part, and the transfer is in progress.

**TRANSFERRED:** The transfer is successfully completed for this selected part. It is now available on the selected PC disk/diskette.

**CANCELED:** You have canceled the transfer by pressing the *PF5* key. The file that was being transferred is erased from the PC disk/diskette.

**NOT TRANSF:** The specified file is not transferred due to a line error, a MOSS error, or a link down (see *PF9*).

## Canceling File Transfer

To cancel the file transfer, press **PF5**. The process will be stopped, the status of each selected part is set to CANCELED, and the file being transferred is erased on the PC disk/diskette.

The parts fully transferred are not kept on the PC disk/diskette.

The part being transferred is erased from the PC disk/diskette.

The whole file is erased from the PC disk/diskette.

PF keys are explained on page A-10.

"Remote Assistance Application Messages" on page A-34 gives the explanation and user response for the messages that may be displayed.

rap112	<div>3720 REMOTE ASSISTANCE FILE TRANSFER Version 1.0</div>	Serial Number=xxxxxxx
- Enter disk/diskette address (A, B, C, or D)	==>	A
- Enter dump file name	==>	Mxxxxxxx
- Enter Y to erase the dump in MOSS after transfer	==>	N
- Enter dump part address and press ENTER		
Part 1	fffff to ==>	ttttt ssssssssss
Part 2	fffff to ==>	ttttt ssssssssss
Part 3	fffff to ==>	ttttt ssssssssss
Part 4	fffff to ==>	ttttt ssssssssss
Part 5	fffff to ==>	ttttt ssssssssss
Part 6	fffff to ==>	ttttt ssssssssss
Part 7	fffff to ==>	ttttt ssssssssss
Part 8	fffff to ==>	ttttt ssssssssss
PF5:Cancel	PF6:Quit	<PF9:End>

Figure A-6. Receive MOSS Dump

## Receive MOSS Dump Transfer, Execution Sample

The **receive MOSS dump transfer** execution sample panel (see Figure A-7 on page A-18) presumes the following actions:

- You selected function 2 on the *file transfer selection* panel (see Figure A-3 on page A-12).
- The 3720 serial number is: 3417903
- You do not change the default parameter for the file name
- You selected the second diskette address (B).
- You intend to transfer a MOSS dump (3 parts).
- During Part 2 transfer, you pressed **PF5**.

rap112

3720 REMOTE ASSISTANCE  
FILE TRANSFER Version 1.0

Serial  
Number=xxxxxxx

- Enter disk/diskette address (A, B, C, or D) ==> B  
 - Enter dump file name ==> M3417903  
 - Enter Y to erase the dump in MOSS after transfer ==> N  
 - Enter dump part address and press ENTER

Part 1 ==> 01000 to ==> 014BF CANCELED  
 Part 2 ==> 02000 to ==> 1A000 CANCELED  
 Part 3 ==> 1CBF0 to ==> 1F00F CANCELED  
 Part 4 ==> to ==>  
 Part 5 ==> to ==>  
 Part 6 ==> to ==>  
 Part 7 ==> to ==>  
 Part 8 ==> to ==>

PF5:Cancel PF6:Quit

<PF9:End>

Figure A-7. Receive MOSS Dump Transfer, Execution Sample

---

## Receiving a Scanner Dump

You have selected function 3 on the **file transfer selection** panel (Figure A-3 on page A-12). The **receive scanner dump transfer execution** panel (see Figure A-8 on page A-20) is displayed and the fields are filled with their default values:

- The serial number of the 3720 currently connected is displayed at the top right corner of the panel.
- The PC disk/diskette address is set to A.
- The dump file name field is set to the name specified in "File Naming" on page A-6
- The erase dump indicator is set to N.
- The status field (rightmost field for all files listed) is set to blanks.

### Selecting the Parts of the Scanner Dump you Want to Receive

You select the parts by:

1. Changing the PC disk/diskette address to B, C, or D (default is A).
2. Changing, if necessary, the name of the scanner dump file.

If there is already a file with the same name on your PC disk/diskette, the corresponding status field (rightmost field on the lines) will display EXIST.

3. Entering the 'from' address and 'to' address of each part of the dump you want to receive. The addresses must be in hexadecimal format.

The dump part limits must fit within the scanner dump limits (boundary), as displayed below *Enter dump part address* on the panel.

**Note:** Scanner dump valid address boundaries are 00000/1FFFF.

All the selected parts (1-8) must be separated. If an overlay area is found within the selected parts, an error message is displayed.

The 'from' and 'to' addresses are automatically justified on MOSS disk sector boundaries.

When multiple parts are requested, they must be entered in sequence (for example: part 1, then part 2).

During the dump transfer, the operator is informed every time half a kbyte of dump data is transferred.

### File Transfer Status

If the input is correct, the transfer starts, the part in progress blinks, and the status displays the following:

IN PROGRESS: You have selected this part, and the transfer is in progress.

TRANSFERRED: The transfer is successfully completed for this selected part. It is now available on the selected PC disk/diskette.

CANCELED: You have canceled the transfer by pressing the PF5 key. The file that was being transferred is erased from the PC disk/diskette.

NOT TRANSF: The specified file is not transferred due to a line error, a MOSS error, or a link down (see PF9).

## Canceling File Transfer

To cancel the file transfer, press *PF5*. The process will be stopped, the status of each selected part is set to CANCELED, and the file being transferred is erased on PC disk/diskette.

The parts fully transferred are not kept on the PC disk/diskette.

The part being transferred is erased from the PC disk/diskette.

The whole file is erased from the PC disk/diskette. An example of the panel after pressing *PF5* during a transfer is shown in Figure A-8.

PF keys are explained on page A-10.

"Remote Assistance Application Messages" on page A-34 gives the explanation and user response for the messages that may be displayed.

rap113

3720 REMOTE ASSISTANCE  
FILE TRANSFER Version 1.0

Serial  
Number=xxxxxxx

- Enter disk/diskette address (A, B, C, or D) ==> A

- Enter dump file name ==> Sxxxxxxx

- Enter Y to erase the dump in MOSS after transfer ==> N

- Enter dump part address and press ENTER  
(scanner dump boundaries are 11111 and hhhhh)

Part 1 address from ==> fffff to ==> ttttt sssssssssss

Part 2 address from ==> fffff to ==> ttttt sssssssssss

Part 3 address from ==> fffff to ==> ttttt sssssssssss

Part 4 address from ==> fffff to ==> ttttt sssssssssss

Part 5 address from ==> fffff to ==> ttttt sssssssssss

Part 6 address from ==> fffff to ==> ttttt sssssssssss

Part 7 address from ==> fffff to ==> ttttt sssssssssss

Part 8 address from ==> fffff to ==> ttttt sssssssssss

PF5:Cancel

PF6:Quit

<PF9:End>

Figure A-8. Receive Scanner Dump Transfer, Execution Panel



---

## Receiving TRSS Dumps

You have selected function 4 on the **file transfer selection** panel (Figure A-3 on page A-12). The **receive TRSS dumps transfer** panel (see Figure A-9 on page A-22) is displayed and the fields are filled with their default values:

- The serial number of the 3720 currently connected is displayed at the top right corner of the panel.
- The PC disk/diskette address is set to A.
- The dump file name field is set to the name specified in "File Naming" on page A-6
- The erase dump indicator is set to N.
- The status field (to the right of the disk/diskette address) is set to blanks.

### Specifying the transfer

You specify the transfer by:

1. Changing the PC disk/diskette address to B, C, or D (default is A).
2. Changing, if necessary, the name of the TRSS dump file.

If there is already a file with the same name on your PC disk/diskette, the corresponding status field (rightmost field on the lines) will display EXIST.

3. Changing the erase option to Y This will cause the MOSS to erase the TRSS dump file (CHGTRSS) from the MOSS disk after successful completion of the transfer.

During the dump transfer, the operator is informed every time half a kbyte of dump data is transferred.

### File Transfer Status

If the input is correct, the transfer starts, and the status displays the following:

IN PROGRESS: The transfer is in progress.

TRANSFERRED: The transfer is successfully completed. It is now available on the selected PC disk/diskette.

If requested (erase option = Y), the CHGTRSS dump file is deleted from MOSS disk.

CANCELED: You have canceled the transfer by pressing the PF5 key. The file that was being transferred is erased from the PC disk/diskette.

NOT TRANSF: The file is not transferred due to a line error, a MOSS error, or a link down (see PF9).

### Canceling File Transfer

To cancel the file transfer, press PF5. The process will be stopped, the status is set to CANCELED, and the file being transferred is erased on PC disk/diskette.

The whole file is erased from the PC disk/diskette. An example of the panel after pressing PF5 during a transfer is shown in Figure A-9 on page A-22.

PF keys are explained on page A-10.

"Remote Assistance Application Messages" on page A-34 gives the explanation and user response for the messages that may be displayed.

rap115

3720 REMOTE ASSISTANCE  
FILE TRANSFER Version 1.0

Serial  
Number=0030009

- Enter disk/diskette address (A, B, C, or D) ==> A CANCELED
- ENTER DUMP FILE NAME ==> T0030009
- Enter Y to erase the dump in MOSS after transfer ==> N

PF5:Cancel      PF6:Quit      <PF9:End>

Figure A-9. Receive TRSS Dumps Transfer Panel (Sample of Transfer Canceled)

---

## Sending an MCF File from PC to 3720

MCFs must first be sent to a PC disk/diskette, see "Transferring MCFs from VM to PC then to MOSS" on page A-5.

You have selected function 5 on the **file transfer selection** panel (Figure A-3 on page A-12).

The **send MCF** panel (see Figure A-10 on page A-24) is displayed in two steps:

1. First the serial number of the 3720 currently connected is displayed at the top right corner of the panel, and the PC disk/diskette address is set to A.

Enter the letter corresponding to the PC disk/diskette drive that contains the MCF files to be transferred to MOSS.

2. Then the remainder of the panel is set to all the MCF file names found on the PC disk/diskette specified.

The status field (rightmost field for all files listed) is set to blanks.

### Selecting the MCF File you Want to Transfer to MOSS

You select the file by:

1. Changing the PC disk/diskette address to B, C, or D (default is A).
2. Entering Y next to the MCF file name you want to send to MOSS.

Only **one** MCF file can be selected on a panel.

If all MCF files cannot be displayed on one panel, use *PF7* (Forward) and *PF8* (backward) to scroll back and forth.

If you change the PC disk/diskette address, the MCF files displayed will be those of the new PC disk/diskette address specified.

### File Transfer Status

If the input is correct, the transfer starts, the file name in progress blinks and the status displays the following:

**IN PROGRESS:** You have selected this file, and the transfer is in progress. The file name is blinking.

**TRANSFERRED:** The transfer is successfully completed for this selected file.

**CANCELED:** You have canceled the transfer by pressing the *PF5* key, or the cancel is due to a line error or a MOSS error (see *PF9*).

The file that was being transferred still remains on the PC disk/diskette.

### Canceling File Transfer

To cancel the file transfer, press *PF5*. The process will be stopped, the status of the file is set to CANCELED, and the file being transferred still remains on the PC disk/diskette.

*PF* keys are explained on page A-10.

"Remote Assistance Application Messages" on page A-34 gives the explanation and user response for the messages that may be displayed.

rap114

3720 REMOTE ASSISTANCE  
FILE TRANSFER Version 1.0

Serial  
Number=xxxxxxx

- Enter disk/diskette address (A, B, C, or D) ==> A
- Select the file to be sent (Y/N) and press ENTER

ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss	ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss
ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss	ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss
ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss	ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss
ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss	ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss
ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss	ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss
ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss	ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss

PF5:Cancel    PF6:Quit    PF7:Forward    PF8:Backward    <PF9:End>

Figure A-10. Send MCF Execution

---

## File Printing Application

### Application Description

This application addresses only printer number one.

The files to be formatted and printed are the following:

- Dump files:
  - MOSS Dump
  - Scanner Dump
  - TRSS Dumps
- CDF file
- PCH file
- BER file
- MLT file

This function can (**and should**) be activated *offline*; it means that the PC need not be connected to the 3720. The operator has to load the proper disk/diskette file and to select the Printing Function.

Printing can be canceled using the CANCEL key (*PF5*).

The printing format depends on the files to be printed. The maximum number of characters per line is 132.

### Printing Time

The time required to print 1 kbyte of data is between 60 and 100 seconds.

### File Printing Procedure

To Print MOSS files (CDF, MLT, BER), MCF files, or MOSS, scanner, and TRSS dumps, you must:

1. Be in DOS mode.
2. Load the *file printing* application by typing `d:RAXPRT`. (where *d* is the PC disk/diskette address on which the file printing programs are located).

The **file printing selection** panel (see Figure A-11 on page A-26) is displayed. (The PC disk/diskette address is set to A.)

### Selecting the File you Want to Print

To select the file:

1. Change the PC disk/diskette address to B, C, or D (default is A).
2. Enter the number (1 to 7) corresponding to the file name you want to print.

If the file requested exists on the selected PC disk/diskette, the **file printing execution** panel (see Figure A-12 on page A-27) is displayed.

What to do next is explained in "Printing a File" on page A-26.

PF keys are explained on page A-10.

"Remote Assistance Application Messages" on page A-34 gives the explanation and user response for the messages that may be displayed.

rap002

3720 REMOTE ASSISTANCE

FILE-PRINT      Version 1.0

.....

.....

..

..

..

..

..

.....

.....

.....

.....

..

..

..

..

..

.....

.....

.....

.....

..

..

..

..

..

.....

.....

.....

.....

..

..

..

..

..

.....

.....

.....

.....

..

..

..

..

..

.....

.....

.....

.....

..

..

..

..

..

.....

.....

Microcode (c) Copyright IBM Corp. 1986

- SELECT THE FILE TO PRINT (1 to 7) ==>

1 - CDF    3 - MLT    5 - MOSS DUMP    7 - TIC DUMPS

2 - BER    4 - PCH    6 - SCAN DUMP

- Enter disk/diskette address (A,B,C or D) ==> A

- Press ENTER

PF6:Quit

Figure A-11. File Printing Selection

## Printing a File

You have entered (1 to 6) on the previous **file printing selection** panel (see Figure A-11).

The **file printing execution** panel (see Figure A-12 on page A-27) is displayed and the fields are filled with their default values:

- The file type and the disk address are set to what you entered in previous panel.
- The panel displays all the files of the selected PC disk/diskette that have the required file type (with printing request N).

## Start to Print the File

1. Type Y (instead of N) next to the file name(s) of the file(s) you want to print.
2. Press **ENTER**.

## File Printing Status.

When the input is successfully checked by the application, printing starts, and the status fields are updated as follows:

**IN PROGRESS:** You have selected this file, and printing is in progress on the IBM 5152 printer.

**PRINTED:** Printing is successfully completed for this selected file.

**CANCELED:** You have canceled the transfer by pressing the **PF5** key, or there is a disk/diskette error.

**NOT PRINTED:** The specified file is not printed due to your cancel request during the printing of another file.

A-26 3720 Service Guide

## Canceling File Printing

To cancel file printing, press *PF5*. The process will be stopped, the status of the file being printed is set to CANCELED, the status of the files remaining to be printed is set to NOT PRINTED,

An example of the panel after pressing *PF5* during a transfer is shown in "File Printing Execution Sample".

PF keys are explained on page A-10.

"Remote Assistance Application Messages" on page A-34 gives the explanation and user response for the messages that may be displayed.

rap021

3720 REMOTE ASSISTANCE  
nnn PRINT from disk: d

- Select the files to print (Y/N) and press ENTER

ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss	ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss
ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss	ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss
ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss	ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss
ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss	ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss
ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss	ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss
ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss	ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss
ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss	ffffff ==> N	ssssssssss

PF6:Quit

PF7:Forward

PF8:Backward

Figure A-12. File Printing Execution Panel

## File Printing Execution Sample

The *file printing execution* sample panel (see Figure A-13 on page A-28) presumes the following actions:

- You have selected function 1 (CDF) on the **file printing selection** panel (see Figure A-11 on page A-26).
- You used the default PC disk/diskette address (A).
- Eight CDF files are available on the selected disk/diskette.
- You intend to print five of them.
- During the printing of C0981217, you pressed *PF5* (cancel).

rap021

3720 REMOTE ASSISTANCE

nnn PRINT from disk: d

- Select the files to print (Y/N) and press ENTER

C1234567 ==> Y PRINTED	C2333323 ==> N
C3454912 ==> Y PRINTED	
C1254912 ==> N	
C0981217 ==> Y CANCELED	
C1234123 ==> Y NOT PRINTED	
C3456780 ==> N	
C3444480 ==> Y NOT PRINTED	

PF5:Cancel

PF6:Quit

Figure A-13. Sample Panel for File Printing Execution

## Printing TRSS Dumps

1. You have selected function 7 (TIC) on the **file printing selection** panel (see Figure A-11 on page A-26).

The *TRSS Dump Selection* panel is displayed (see Figure A-14 on page A-29) with a list of all TRSS dump files transferred from MOSS.

2. You select from that panel, the TRSS dump file that you want, by entering Y next to the TRSS dump file name.

The *TIC Dump Selection* panel is displayed (see Figure A-15 on page A-29) with a list of all TIC dumps (up to 4) that the TRSS dump file contains.

3. You select from that panel, the TIC dump that you want to print:
  - Change the N to Y. for the TIC dump to be printed.



rap021

3720 REMOTE ASSISTANCE  
 TDP PRINT from disk: d

- SELECT THE FILES TO PRINT (Y/N) AND PRESS ENTER

T1234567 ==> Y                      C2333323 ==> N

T3454912 ==> N

T1254912 ==> N

T0981217 ==> N

T1234123 ==> N

T3456780 ==> N

T3444480 ==> N

PF5:Cancel      PF6:Quit

Figure A-14. Sample Panel for TRSS Dumps Printing Selection

rap021

3720 REMOTE ASSISTANCE  
 TRSS PRINT from disk: d

- SELECT THE DESIRED TIC DUMP TO PRINT (Y/N) FROM T1234567 AND PRESS ENTER

TRA:02 TIC:1 DATE/TIME:00/00/00 00:04:25 ==> Y

TRA:02 TIC:2 DATE/TIME:00/00/00 00:08:29 ==> N

TRA:02 TIC:2 DATE/TIME:00/00/00 00:10:39 ==> N

PF5:Cancel      PF6:Quit

Figure A-15. Sample Panel for TIC Dump Printing Execution

---

## Remote Application Description

The file transfer is made up of one application in the MOSS and one application in the PC.

Once file transfer applications are ready on both sides, they communicate using their own message formats. This protocol has been implemented in this application to improve transfer reliability and data integrity.

Being the master in the file transfer function, the PC application requests from the operator all the information it needs. All the operator inputs are checked for validity (such as duplicate or invalid file names).

### MOSS File Transfer Application

The MOSS application is transient; it is invoked as an ordinary MOSS function by the *operator control task* when it receives a file transfer request from the IBM PC.

The MOSS application receives from the PC all information (file ID, Logical Record Number, direction of transfer) about the files that it must send or receive.

### MOSS File Transfer Activation

The file transfer application is activated as soon as it has been loaded by the operator control.

Once activated the application sets the MOSS to *file transfer* mode. This mode, which enables the application to transmit and receive data from the PC without any operator control interference, is reset only by a TERMINATE message received from the MOSS or by the file transfer application error recovery after an unrecoverable error.

### MOSS File Transfer Termination

When the MOSS application recognizes the TERMINATE FILE TRANSFER message coming from the PC, it closes all the opened files, resets the *file transfer* mode, and returns control to the *operator control task*, which has to wait for the next operator entry.

### PC File Transfer Application

In the PC, the file transfer application runs under the control of the PC Disk Operating System (DOS), using its facilities to send and receive data to/from the MOSS over the Asynchronous Communication adapter.

### PC File Transfer Activation

The PC file transfer application can be activated only if the PC is connected to the 3720. Running the 3101 Emulation Program, the operator can press ALT + PF10, then select the QUIT option to return to DOS. When in DOS, the operator loads the File Transfer application using the normal DOS command `d:RAXFER`.

**Note:** *d* is the address of PC disk/diskette drive at which the file transfer programs are located.

First, the application checks if the link with the 3720 is correct, then it tells the 3720 to load its own file transfer application, and the PC file transfer application waits for the 3720 Extended Status. After receiving it, the **file transfer selection** panel is displayed. Then the PC application waits for a file transfer specification from the operator.

## PC File Transfer Termination

When the operator presses *PF6* to quit the file transfer mode, the PC application sends a `TERMINATE FILE TRANSFER` message to the MOSS. When the PC receives the Terminate Acknowledgment from the MOSS, it returns to DOS.

## Data Transfer

To send data to the PC the MOSS file transfer application proceeds in the same way as it would to display the same information on the MOSS console. This path implies that all the transferred data is, before being sent over the line, translated into 7-bit ASCII characters by the Console Control Code. This operation will double the data length.

All the data messages received by the PC are coded in 7-bit ASCII notation. In order to save space on the PC diskette, the IBM-PC file transfer application translates all this data into its initial 8 bits/byte form.

## Error Recovery

There are two error recovery levels:

1. All the hardware or communication interface errors detected by the DOS Communication Support routines are normally recovered by the DOS recovery routines.
2. Logical errors (protocol errors) are treated by the File Transfer application routines in the following manner:

Each time a message or a protocol character is sent over the line, a 3-second response time-out is started. If this time-out comes up, the last operation is restarted nine times if necessary.

If a checksum or a message numbering error is detected by the receiver, a NAK is returned to the transmitter and the transmitter must again send the last message transmitted. This operation can be restarted up to nine times.

In all cases, if after nine retries the in-process operation still fails, the transfer attempt stops on both sides and the operator is informed through an error message. The application then waits for an operator action.

## Data Transparency

All the data messages transferred over the line are in a displayed format. ASCII notation used to transfer the data allows using some not-displayed ASCII characters for protocol sequences.

This notation allows transmissions without interference between data files and protocol sequences.

## Data Integrity

Data integrity will be preserved by the transfer protocol which is much more efficient than the normal data validity checking based only on both side parity checking.

The base unit for a data file transfer is a MOSS/PC diskette sector length (512 bytes). All data transfers must be justified on this length unit.

To prevent line problems on very large data transfer and to improve retry flexibility and efficiency, the data message length is fixed at 64 data bytes plus the control characters.

A transferred block length being 512 bytes, there will be eight data messages for a block transfer.

## MOSS/PC Interface

### General Information About the Protocol

Data is transferred over the line by blocks of 512 bytes; a whole data block is transferred using eight data messages of 64 bytes each.

The receiver is always informed of a complete data block transfer by receiving a special control character (EOB or EOT if the block is the last one of the file).

A status message response instead of an ACK looks like an EOT for the current transfer. This means that there will be no more data message exchange for the file in error.

After an EOB, an EOT, or a status message, whichever the receiver or transmitter, the PC application must always wait for a 'NACK' coming from the MOSS to signal that it is again ready to receive a request from the PC.

All the NACKs between a request file transfer specification and an 'EOB', 'EOT', or a status message must be acknowledged.

All the messages and protocol characters sent over the line are always acknowledged by the receiver, either by a control character or by a message (data or status). This rule has four exceptions:

- The NACK sent by the MOSS, at the beginning of a session or after an EOB, an EOT or a status message, to indicate it is ready to receive, may normally stay without answer.
- The NACK sent by the MOSS, every 30 seconds to keep the line.
- The ACK sent to acknowledge an EOB, an EOT or a status message received from the PC.
- The ACK sent to acknowledge a 'hard stop' status message.

Each time the PC sends a message or a control character over the line, a three-second response time-out counter is started (except for the ACKs described above). When the time-out elapses, the PC application retries up to nine times to send the error control character or message.

### Protocol Characters

The file transfer protocol uses the following special characters to control the transfer sequences.

<b>SOH</b>	Start of header (ASCII 01). This control character begins all transferred messages.
<b>ACK</b>	Positive acknowledge (ASCII 06). This control character is used to tell the transmitter that the transmitted information has been received and can be considered as valid (but only from the transfer point of view). It is not a data validity acknowledge.
<b>NACK</b>	Negative acknowledge (ASCII 21). Means that the transmitted information has been received but is not valid after a checksum compare. Also used by the receiver to indicate it is ready to receive.
<b>EOB</b>	End of block (ASCII 23). Used to tell the receiver that there are no more messages to transmit for this block.
<b>EOT</b>	End of transmission (ASCII 04). Used to tell the receiver that there are no more messages or blocks to transmit for this file.
<b>ESCAPE</b>	Message control character (ASCII 27). Used to communicate with the operator control.

## PC Diskette File Sizing

All the files being transferred are justified on sector boundaries. 3720 disk sectors and PC diskette sectors are each 512 bytes long. One PC diskette of 320K bytes has 640 sectors each 512 bytes long. The space required on the PC diskette is:

- 3 sectors for the CDF
- 1 sectors for the MLT
- 28 sectors for the PCH
- 54 sectors for the MCF
- 26 sectors for the BER
- 128 sectors maximum for the SCANNER dump
- 516 sectors maximum for the MOSS dump

**Note:** For MOSS and Scanner Dump, only the necessary number of sectors corresponding to the dump size are allocated.

## File Management

A Remote Assistance dedicated sub-directory entry will be created in the root-directory of the PC disk/diskette on which remote assistance files are to be filed.

The *File Transfer* application will check if the *Free Space* available on the PC disk/diskette is sufficient to contain all the files to be saved on it. It will also control the file name validity and will prompt the operator for each duplicated name. In the case of duplicate names, the operator can:

- Change the name of the file being transferred.
- Replace the file on the PC disk/diskette with the file being received.

---

## Remote Assistance Application Messages

This section lists all information, warning, and error messages that can be displayed by the Remote Assistance applications.

- 001 - File transfer canceled on 3720 request
- 002 - Inactive for 15 minutes: link released
- 003 - Invalid file transfer option
- 004 - Invalid input: Enter Y or N
- 005 - Invalid file name  
Explanation: File name does not respect DOS 2.0 file naming conventions.
- 006 - Invalid disk/diskette address  
Explanation: A PC disk/diskette address other than A, B, C, or D has been specified.
- 007 - PC disk/diskette Error: The open command failed
- 008 - Link with 3720 down  
Explanation: The link with the 3720 is down: The link was never established or has dropped.  
User Response: Press *PF9* to return to DOS and load 3101 emulator to reinitiate the link.
- 009 - Invalid file selection: Enter 1 to 6
- 010 - Address must be hexadecimal
- 011 - Address must be within boundaries  
Explanation: For MOSS dump, valid address boundaries are 00400/7FFFF. For SCANNER dump, valid address boundaries are 00000/1FFFF.
- 012 - End address must be Greater than start address
- 013 - Address must not overlap  
Explanation: Dump parts must be specified in ascending order. Dump parts must not overlap. User Response: Re-enter dump part boundaries in order to have dump parts in ascending order, or re-enter dump part boundaries in order to suppress part overlap.
- 014 - Undefined PF key
- 015 - Internal program error  
Explanation: A non-recoverable error occurred during the process. User Response: Return to DOS and restart the procedure. If the error persists, contact the appropriate service representative.
- 016 - No such file on selected disk/diskette  
Explanation: The file type specified is not found on this PC disk/diskette. User Response: Verify your "FILE TYPE" or PC disk/diskette "ADDRESS" or change your diskette.
- 017 - File name already exists: Press ENTER to confirm  
Explanation: File name already exist on the specified PC disk/diskette. User Response: To confirm this file name press ENTER; in this case the previous file will be canceled; or change the file name.
- 018 - Disk/diskette error: close command failed,  
current file is deleted
- 019 - XXX.X kbytes of data already transferred
- 020 - Printer not ready: start it and press ENTER
- 021 - Out of paper: load paper and press ENTER
- 022 - Disk drive x Read error
- 023 - Disk drive x Write error  
User Response: call the PC service representative.

- 024 - Unable to load file transfer  
User Response: Check the 3101 emulator or terminate any active MOSS function.
- 025 - MOSS dump file empty  
User Response: Enter a new selection or return to 3101 emulator.
- 026 - Scanner dump file empty  
User Response: Enter a new selection or return to 3101 emulator.
- 027 - 3720 disk error  
User Response: For CE: return to 3101 for investigation.
- 028 - No MCF file found on the selected disk/diskette  
User Response: Change the selected PC disk/diskette address and re-start the command.
- 029 - Dump part selection must be sequential
- 030 - Disk drive x not ready
- 031 - No more space available on x disk/diskette
- 032 - Selected disk/diskette not configured  
Explanation: C or D address has been specified. It does not exist in the current configuration.
- 033 - Printer I/O error, press PF5 to cancel.
- 034 - EC level found on MCF file does not match the machine EC level  
User Response: Check the list of MCF files available on the PC disk/diskette.
- 035 - Permanent data error, leave current session.
- 050 - TRSS dump file empty  
User Response: Enter a new selection or return to 3101 emulator.





---

## Appendix B. Messages and Alarms

---

### Messages

This section describes the messages displayed on the operator console. **Only messages that require more explanation or a specific user action will be listed in this appendix.**

Messages which are displayed when running customer-oriented functions such as *Control Program procedures or programmable line speed*, are fully documented in the *3720 Communication Controller, Problem Determination*, SY33-0086 (PD) or in the *3720 Communication Controller, Extended Services*, SY33-0066 (ES).

The messages in the table below are listed in **alphabetical order**

**Action:** Retry and perform all necessary actions, such as re-IML or DUMP request, before calling the software or hardware support.

**ALTERNATE TRACK ASSIGNMENT MAP FULL, CHANGE DISK (Function: DF)**

User Response: See SG Chapter 10 and MIR

**CABLE DOES NOT EXIST (Function: common)**

Explanation: Line not installed/not configured

**CCU/MOSS ERROR: AUTO SELECT NOT DISABLED (Function: CA)**

Explanation: Hardware error on MOSS-to-CCU interface. BER Type 01-02 is created.

**CCU/MOSS ERROR: AUTO SELECT NOT ENABLED (Function: CA)**

Explanation: Hardware error on MOSS-to-CCU interface. BER Type 01-02 is created.

**CCU/MOSS ERROR: BT BUFFER NOT ACCESSIBLE (Function: BT)**

Explanation: Hardware error on MOSS-to-CCU interface. BER Type 01-02 is created.

**CCU/MOSS ERROR: BT BUFFER NOT UPDATED (Function: BT)**

Explanation: Hardware error on MOSS-to-CCU interface. BER Type 01-02 is created.

**CCU/MOSS ERROR: CA CANNOT BE SELECTED (Function: CA)**

Explanation: Hardware error on MOSS-to-CCU interface. BER Type 01-02 is created.

**CCU/MOSS ERROR: CA REGISTER X'E' NOT ACCESSIBLE (Function: CA)**

Explanation: Hardware error on MOSS-to-CCU interface. BER Type 01-02 is created.

**CCU/MOSS ERROR: CA REGISTERS NOT ACCESSIBLE (Function: CA)**

Explanation: Hardware error on MOSS-to-CCU interface. BER Type 01-02 is created.

**CCU/MOSS ERROR: CA STATE NOT ACCESSIBLE (Function: CA)**

Explanation: Hardware error on MOSS-to-CCU interface. BER Type 01-02 is created.

**CCU/MOSS ERROR: DISK FUNCTION CANNOT BE PERFORMED (Function: DF)**

Explanation: Hardware error on MOSS-to-CCU interface. BER Type 01-02 is created.

**CCU/MOSS ERROR: FUNCTION NOT PERFORMED (Function: Common)**

Explanation: Hardware error on MOSS-to-CCU interface. BER Type 01-02 is created.

**CCU/MOSS ERROR: INPUT X'71', X'72' REG NOT ACCES. (Function: Data exchange)**

Explanation: Hardware error on MOSS-to-CCU interface. BER Type 01-02 is created.

**CCU/MOSS ERROR: INITIAL CA CANNOT BE RESELECTED (Function: CA)**

Explanation: Hardware error on MOSS-to-CCU interface. BER Type 01-02 is created.

**CCU/MOSS ERROR: STEP NOT EXECUTED (Function: Control program)**

Explanation: Hardware error on MOSS-to-CCU interface. BER Type 01-02 is created.

**CCU/MOSS ERROR: WORK REGISTERS CANNOT BE ALTERED (Function: Display/Alter)**

Explanation: Hardware error on MOSS-to-CCU interface. BER Type 01-02 is created.

**CCU/MOSS ERROR: RESET CCU FUNCTION CANCELED (Function: CCU/LSSD)**

Explanation: Physical error. BER Type 01-02 is created.

**CCU/MOSS ERROR: WRAP FUNCTION CANCELED (Function: Wrap)**

Explanation: Physical error. BER Type 01-02 is created.

**CCU NORMAL MODE IMMEDIATE FUNCTION FAILED**

Explanation: Physical error. BER Type 01-02 is created.

**CDF NOT CREATED: WRAP FUNCTION CANCELED (Function: Wrap)**

Explanation: 3720 CDF not tested.

**CONTROLLER DATA UNAVAILABLE: FUNCTION CANCELED**

Explanation: Physical error during diskette access

**DISK DIRECTORY CAPACITY EXCEEDED: MOSS DOWN (Function: DF)**  
Explanation: Too many customer files.

**DISK-DISKETTE ADAPTER DOWN (Function: DF)**  
User Response: See SG Chapter 10 and MIR

**DISK ERROR - SPEED CANNOT BE UPDATED (Function: PLS)**  
User Response: Disk hardware error. See SG Chapter 10 and MIR

**DISK ERROR: FUNCTION CANCELED (Function: DF)**  
User Response: Disk hardware error. See SG Chapter 10 and MIR

**DISK ERROR: MOSS DOWN (Function: DF)**  
User Response: Disk hardware error. See SG Chapter 10 and MIR

**DISK ERROR: SAVE CANCELED (Function: DF)**  
User Response: Disk hardware error. See SG Chapter 10 and MIR

**DISK ERROR: UNABLE TO LOAD FUNCTION MODULE**  
User Response: Disk hardware error. See SG Chapter 10 and MIR

**DISK OR DISKETTE UNUSABLE**  
User Response: Disk hardware error. See SG Chapter 10 and MIR

**DISK UNUSABLE: EC NOT INITIALIZED**  
User Response: Disk hardware error. See SG Chapter 10 and MIR

**DISKETTE ERROR: FUNCTION CANCELED: PRESS SEND (Function: DF)**  
User Response: See SG Chapter 10 and MIR

**DISKETTE ERROR: IML CANCELED (Function: One scanner IML.)**  
Explanation: Scanner microcode down. User Response: See SG Chapter 10 and MIR

**DISKETTE ERROR: MOSS DOWN (Function: DF)**  
User Response: See SG Chapter 10 and MIR

**DISKETTE ERROR: SAVE CANCELED (Function: DF)**  
Explanation: Error during save on second diskette User Response: Restart from first diskette

**DISKETTE UNUSABLE**  
Explanation: Diskette adapter problem User Response: IML MOSS. Call support.

**DISPLAY ADDRESS MODIFIED TO xxxx (Function: TRS)**  
Explanation: An odd display TIC storage address was entered; the odd address is rounded down to the nearest even address.

**ERROR DURING ERROR RECOVERY (Function: LID)**  
Explanation: Scanner cannot process MOSS command. Scanner hardware error BER type 01-05 is created. User Response: Re-IML Scanner. Call support.

**ERROR IN FRONT END SCANNER PROCESSOR (Function: LID)**  
Explanation: Scanner cannot process MOSS command. Scanner hardware error BER type 01-05 is created. User Response: Re-IML Scanner. Call support.

**ERROR IN SCANNER DURING COMMAND PROCESSING (Function: Common)**  
Explanation: Scanner cannot process MOSS command. Scanner hardware error BER type 01-05 is created. User Response: Re-IML Scanner. Call support.

**ERROR IN SCANNER: ICC/LIC FAILED OR NOT PRESENT (Function: LID)**  
Explanation: Scanner cannot process MOSS command. Scanner hardware error BER type 01-05 is created. User Response: Re-IML Scanner. Call support.

**EXEC CANCELED: OUTPUT X'71' REG NOT ACCESSIBLE (Function: Ctrl pgm)**  
Explanation: Hardware error on the CCU-to-MOSS boundary BER type 01-02 is created.

**FILE CHGxxxxx NOT FOUND ON xxxx: FUNCTION CANCELED (Function: DF)**  
Explanation: File not on new EC diskette or not on disk

**FILE CHGxxx SMALLER ON DISKETTE: FUNCTION CANCELED (Function: DF)**  
Explanation: Not enough space for CHGxxxxx on EC diskette

**INCORRECT PASSWORD - TERMINAL DISCONNECTED (Function: Logon)**  
User Response: Get password and reconnect.

**INVALID LCD: WRAP FUNCTION CANCELED (Function: Wrap)**  
Explanation: Invalid LCD transmitted by CP

**IOC ERROR DURING ERROR RECOVERY (Function: Common)**  
Explanation: The scanner cannot process MOSS command BER type 01-05 is created.

**IOC/SCANNER ERROR: FUNCTION NOT PERFORMED (Function: Common)**  
Explanation: Hardware error in scanner/IOC bus BER type 01-05 is created.

**IOC/TRA ERROR: FUNCTION NOT PERFORMED (Function: Common)**  
Explanation: Hardware error in TRA/IOC bus BER type 01-07 is created. Call support.

**MICROCODE DETECTED ERROR DURING COMMAND PROCESS. (Function: LID)**  
Explanation: Scanner microcode detected error BER type 01-05 is created. User Response: Re-IML scanner.

**NO ANSWER FROM CCU CTRL PGM: WRAP FUNCT. CANCELED (Function: Wrap)**

Explanation: Check if MOSS-ONLINE and Wrap tests in Ctrl pgm BER type 01-02 is created.

**NO ANSWER TO ERROR STATUS REQ DURING ERROR RECOV. (Function: LID)**

Explanation: Scanner cannot process MOSS command BER type 01-05 is created.  
User Response: Re-IPL the 3270. Call support.

**PF2 REFUSED (Function: Common)**

Explanation: CCU functions selected before MOSS IML phase 2 User Response: Self-explanatory

**RESET CCU FAILED**

Explanation: CCU cannot be reset because of a hardware error BER type 01-02 is created. User Response: Re-IPL the CCU. Call support.

**SCANNER CONNECTION REJECTED BY CCU CTRL PGM (Function: One-scanner IML)**

Explanation: IMLed scanner not recognized by CCU control program BER type 01-05 is created.

**SCANNER CYCLE STEAL TO/FROM CCU FAILED (Function: LID)**

Explanation: Incorrect cycle steal parameters BER type 01-05 is created. User Response: Re-IML scanner, re-IPL the 3270. Call support.

**SCANNER HARDSTOP DURING COMMAND PROCESSING (Function: LID)**

Explanation: A scanner hardstop error is detected BER type 01-05 is created.

**SELECTED TIC NOT AVAILABLE: REQUEST REJECTED (Function: TRI)**

User Response: Check CDF and control program SYSGEN.

**START CCU FAILED**

Explanation: CCU cannot be started due to hardware error. BER type 01-02 is created. User Response: Re-IPL the CCU. Call support.

**STOP CCU FAILED**

Explanation: CCU cannot be stopped due to a hardware error BER type 01-02 is created. User Response: Check CDF. Call support.

**TRA SELECTED IS NOT INSTALLED (Function: TRI)**

User Response: Check CDF.

**UNAUTHORIZED ACCESS - TERMINAL DISCONNECTED (Function: Logon)**

Explanation: Password deactivated User Response: Contact password management personnel.

**UNABLE TO SET TIC STORAGE BOUNDARY**

Explanation: The TIC did not correctly set the requested TIC 2Kb storage boundary. BER 01-07 is created.

---

## Alarms

Alarms provide an automatic first level of problem determination. Most alarms are given a **reference code**, which appears at the rightmost position of the alarm. This reference code is meant to help service personnel identify the problem.

For most alarms, related messages are sent to the NetView/NPDA console or to the host console.

### How to Display an Alarm

Once generated, the alarm is automatically displayed and an audible signal is heard if the console is logged on.

When an alarm is already displayed, you are informed that another one is waiting for display by the blinking of the word ALARM. Press PF3 to display it. Up to five alarms may be waiting for display. If a sixth one is generated, it is stacked but the oldest one is erased.

Pressing PF3 when no alarms are waiting clears the Alarm area from the screen.

**Warning:** Before pressing PF3 to display the next alarm or to clear the displayed alarm, note the reference code. If you forget to do so, select the Event Log function to display all the alarms (see Chapter 2, "Analyzing BERs (Box Event Records)" on page 2-1).

No	Description	Action
A0	MOSS IML EXCEPTION xxx yyy zzz xxx=FE4: CDF not initialized on disk =FE5: CDF not accessible on disk =FE6: Unidentified IPL or MOSS IML request =FE7: MOSS-to-Control program communication time out yyy=FEB: Bad Function Select switch position =FED: MOSS IML complete with non-fatal errors if zzz=FEC: Serial number not initialized	Refcode Refcode Refcode Refcode Self-explanatory None
A2	MOSS RECOVERABLE ERROR: MOSS	Dump MOSS
A3	MOSS DISKETTE DOWN	Hex code
A4	MOSS DISKETTE ERROR: DISKETTE IS DEFECTIVE	Hex code
A6	MOSS OFFLINE: MAINTENANCE MODE (information)	None
A7	HARDWARE ERROR: 3720 RE-IPL IN PROGRESS	If problem persists, use Refcode
A8	SOFTWARE ERROR: 3720 RE-IPL IN PROGRESS	
A9	HARDWARE ERROR: CHANNEL ADAPTER x DOWN	
A10	GENERAL IPL CHECK (hardware)	See MSA field w Retry: hex code, then Refcode
A15	LINE ADAPTER xxx DOWN (hardware) Refcode=B1B1xxxx or B1A2xxxx Refcode is not B1B1xxxx or B1A2xxxx	Reactivate line, Line problem Refcode
A16	SCANNER xx ERROR (LINES xxx-yyy) - RE-IML IN PROGRESS (hardware error)	None
A17	SCANNER xx ERROR (LINES xxx-yyy) - RE-IML IN PROGRESS (software error)	None
A18	SCANNER xx ERROR (LINES xxx-yyy) - RE-IML SUCCESSFUL (hardware error)	None
A19	SCANNER xx ERROR (LINES xxx-yyy) - RE-IML SUCCESSFUL (software error)	Dump scanner
A20	SCANNER xx ERROR (LINES xxx-yyy) (hardware error)	Refcode
A21	SCANNER xx ERROR (LINES xxx-yyy) (software error)	If problem persists, use Refcode
A22	SCANNER xx ERROR (LINES xxx-yyy) - RE-IML FAILED (hardware error)	Refcode
A23	SCANNER xx ERROR (LINES xxx-yyy) - RE-IML FAILED (software error)	Refcode
A24	SCANNER xx ERROR (LINES xxx-yyy) - RE-IML FAILED (scanner and MOSS error)	Refcode
A25	REMOTE CONSOLE ERROR: LINE/MODEMS/CONSOLE/MOSS	Logon again
A26	MOSS REMOTE CONSOLE ERROR: CONSOLE	Logon again
A28	TRM 02 DOWN (TIC 1-2) (TRM or control program error)	Refcode
A29	TIC x DOWN ON TRM 02 (TIC, TRM or control program error)	Refcode
A30	MOSS DISK DOWN IPL/DUMP NOT POSSIBLE FROM/ON DISK	Refcode
A31	3720 RE-IPL SUCCESSFUL - DUMP AVAILABLE ON DISK (NCP)	Refcode
A34	3720 RE-IPL FAILED - DUMP AVAILABLE ON DISK (control program)	Refcode
A35	3720 RE-IPL FAILED - DUMP NOT AVAILABLE ON DISK (control program)	Refcode

Figure B-1. Alarms



# List of Abbreviations

<b>Abend</b>	Abnormal end (acronym)	<b>ES</b>	Extended Services (customer manual)
<b>ac</b>	Alternating Current	<b>ESC</b>	1. Emulation Sub Channel. 2. Escape Character
<b>AC</b>	1. Address Control. 2. Address Compare	<b>ETB</b>	End of transmission block character (BSC)
<b>ACF</b>	Advanced Communication Function (ACF/VTAM, ACF/TCAM, ACF/NCP)	<b>ETX</b>	End of Text Character (BSC)
<b>AIO</b>	Adapter Initiated Operation, Working in cycle steal mode. Contrast with PIO	<b>EXB</b>	Extension Board
<b>ASCII</b>	American National Standard Code for Information Interchange	<b>FDX</b>	Duplex
<b>BASB</b>	Basic board	<b>FE</b>	Field Engineering
<b>BCC</b>	Block Check Character. Usually it designates the LRC or the CRC character	<b>FES</b>	Front End Scanner
<b>BCCW</b>	Bit Clock Control Word	<b>FRU</b>	Field Replaceable Unit
<b>BER</b>	Box Event Record	<b>HDX</b>	Half Duplex
<b>bps</b>	bits per second	<b>HCS</b>	Hardware Central Services
<b>BSC</b>	Binary Synchronous Communication	<b>IAR</b>	Instruction Address Register
<b>CA</b>	Channel Adapter	<b>ICC</b>	Internal Clock Control
<b>CAB</b>	Channel Adapter Base	<b>ID</b>	Identifier
<b>CADR</b>	Channel Adapter Driver Receiver	<b>IFT</b>	Internal Function Test
<b>CCITT</b>	Comite Consultatif International Telegraphe et Telephone	<b>IML</b>	Initial Microprogram Load
<b>CCU</b>	Central Control Unit	<b>IOC</b>	Input Output Control
<b>CDF</b>	Configuration Data File	<b>IOH</b>	Adapter Input Output (instruction)
<b>CE</b>	Customer Engineering (WTC Term for FE)	<b>IOHI</b>	Adapter Input Output Immediate (instruction)
<b>CHIN</b>	Channel Interface	<b>IPL</b>	Initial Program Load
<b>CLDP</b>	Controller Loader and Dump Program	<b>ITB</b>	Intermediate Text Block (BSC)
<b>CP</b>	1. Communication Processor. 2. Control program	<b>LAB</b>	Line Attachment Base (Use BASB or EXB)
<b>CRC</b>	Cyclic Redundancy Check Character	<b>LDF</b>	Line Description File (MOSS function)
<b>CS</b>	1. Communication Scanner. 2. Cycle Steal architecture.	<b>LED</b>	Light Emitting Diode
<b>CSP</b>	Communication scanner storage	<b>LIC</b>	Line Interface Coupler (Card)
<b>CSS</b>	1. Control Subsystem. 2. Control Store Select	<b>LICn</b>	Line Interface Coupler (Card) type 1, 2, 3, 4A, or 4B
<b>CSU</b>	Customer set up	<b>LID</b>	1. Line Interface Display (MOSS function) 2. Line Identifier
<b>CTS</b>	Clear To Send	<b>LKP</b>	Link IPL Port (MOSS function)
<b>DCE</b>	Data Circuit - Terminating Equipment (modem, for example)	<b>LOQ</b>	Link Test Requestor (MOSS function)
<b>DCF</b>	Diagnostic control facility	<b>LOS</b>	Link Test Responder (MOSS function)
<b>DCM</b>	Diagnostic control monitor	<b>LS</b>	Local Store
<b>DF</b>	Disk Function (MSS command)	<b>LSAR</b>	Local Store Address Register
<b>DFA</b>	Disk File Adapter	<b>LSSD</b>	Level Scan Sensitive Design
<b>Diag</b>	Diagnostic or diagnostic guide (manual)	<b>LT</b>	Link Test (MOSS function)
<b>DLC</b>	Data Link Control (SNA)	<b>LTH</b>	Line Threshold (MOSS function)
<b>DLE</b>	Data Link Escape Character (BSC)	<b>MAC</b>	MOSS adapter card
<b>DOS</b>	Disk Operating System (PC)	<b>MAP</b>	Maintenance Analysis Procedure
<b>DTE</b>	Data Terminal Equipment	<b>MCF</b>	Microcode Fix
<b>EBCDIC</b>	Extended Binary Coded decimal Interchange Code	<b>MES</b>	Miscellaneous Equipment Specification
<b>EC</b>	Engineering change	<b>MIOC</b>	Moss Input Output Control
<b>ECC</b>	Error Checking and Correction (Code or card)	<b>MIP</b>	Maintenance Information Procedures (manual)
<b>EIA</b>	1. Electronic Industries Association. 2. Interface card	<b>MIR</b>	Maintenance Information Reference (manual)
<b>Enbl</b>	Enable (on the control panel)	<b>MIT</b>	MOSS Interface Table (also called MPT)
<b>ENQ</b>	Enquiry Character (BSC)	<b>MLC</b>	Machine Level Control
<b>EOB</b>	End of Block, Circle D in Start-Stop protocol	<b>MLT</b>	Machine Level Table
<b>EOT</b>	End of transmission (BSC), (End of transmission in Start-Stop is denoted by Circle C)	<b>MOSS</b>	Maintenance and Operator Subsystem
<b>EP</b>	Emulation Program program.	<b>MS</b>	Main Storage
		<b>MSA</b>	Machine Status Area
		<b>MSD</b>	Machine Status Display
		<b>NCP</b>	Network Control Program
		<b>NPDA</b>	Network Problem Determination Application (CNM)
		<b>NPO</b>	Network Power Off

<b>NSC</b>	Native Sub Channel (Use Local Sub Channel)	<b>RSF</b>	Remote Support Facility (RETAIN)
<b>NTRI</b>	NCP Token-ring Interconnect	<b>RST</b>	Request to send
<b>NTT</b>	Nippon Telephone and Telegraph Public Corporation in Japan	<b>SALT</b>	Stand Alone Link Tests
<b>OEM</b>	Original Equipment Manufacturer	<b>SAR</b>	Storage Address Register
<b>OLTS</b>	Online Test System	<b>SCB</b>	System Control Block
<b>OPG</b>	Operator Guide3 (manual)	<b>SDLC</b>	Synchronous Data Link Control
<b>PAF</b>	Panel Access Function (MOSS Function)	<b>SG</b>	Service Guide (this manual)
<b>PC</b>	Personal Computer	<b>SIA</b>	System Input Area (Screen area)
<b>PCA</b>	Programmed Communication Adapter	<b>SIT</b>	Scanner Interface Trace
<b>PD</b>	Problem Determination (customer manual)	<b>SNA</b>	System Network Architecture
<b>PE</b>	Product Engineer	<b>SS</b>	1. Start-Stop
<b>PEP</b>	Partitioned Emulation Programming	<b>SSB</b>	System Status Block
<b>PF</b>	Program function (keys)	<b>STX</b>	The start of text character. (BSC)
<b>PGM</b>	Programs (acronym)	<b>SU</b>	Set up (manual). See CSU
<b>PIO</b>	1. Programmed Input Output (instruction). 2. Program Initiated Operation (contrast with AIO)	<b>SYN</b>	Synchronous idle character (BSC)
<b>PS</b>	1. Port Swap (MOSS function). 2. Power Supply	<b>TCAM</b>	Telecommunications access method
<b>PST CE</b>	Product trained support CE	<b>TPS</b>	Two Processor Switch
<b>PTT</b>	Post Telegraph and Telephone agency	<b>TRI</b>	Token-ring interconnect
<b>PTCE</b>	Product trained CE	<b>TRM</b>	Token-ring multiplexor
<b>PUC</b>	Processor Unit Card	<b>TRSS</b>	Token-ring Subsystem
<b>RAC</b>	Repair Action Code	<b>TSS</b>	Transmission Subsystem
<b>RAM</b>	Random Access Memory < D >. Use Main Storage	<b>U</b>	
<b>RAS</b>	The name given to a function that defines the following aspects of a product: Reliability, Availability, and Serviceability	<b>URSF</b>	Universal Remote Support Facility (RETAIN)
<b>RBAM</b>	Register/Block Access Method	<b>V.24/25/35</b>	CCITT Recommendation on transmission interfaces
<b>RCV</b>	Receive	<b>VM</b>	Virtual Machine
<b>RDV</b>	Redrive	<b>VTAM</b>	Virtual Telecommunication Access Method
<b>ROS</b>	Read Only Storage	<b>XREG</b>	eXternal REGister
		<b>X.21</b>	CCITT Recommendation on transmission interface



---

# Glossary

## A

**adapter-initiated operation (AIO).** A transfer of up to 256 bytes between an adapter (channel or scanner) and the CCU storage. The transfer is initiated by an IOH/IOHI instruction, and is performed in cycle stealing via the IOC bus.

**asynchronous transmission.** Transmission in which each character is individually synchronized, usually by the use of start and stop elements. The start-stop link protocol, for example, uses asynchronous transmission contrast with 'synchronous transmission.'

**auto-answer.** A machine feature that allows a DCE to respond automatically to a call that it receives over a switched line.

**auto-call.** A machine feature that allows a DCE to initiate a call automatically over a switched line.

## B

**binary synchronous communication (BSC).** A uniform procedure, using standardized set of control characters and character sequences, for synchronous transmission of binary-coded data between stations.

**box error record (BER).** Information about an error detected by the controller. It is recorded on the disk and can be displayed on the operator console for error analysis.

## C

**central control unit (CCU).** The controller hardware unit that contains the circuits and data flow paths needed to execute instructions and to control its storage and the attached adapters.

**channel adapter (CA).** A communication controller hardware unit used to attach the controller to a host processor.

**channel interface.** The interface between the controller and the host processors.

**communication controller.** A communication control unit that is controlled by a program stored and executed in the unit.

**Communication Network Management (CNM).** An IBM product program that assists the user in identifying network problems from a control point. It is stored in the host processor and comprises the network problem determination application (NPDA) and the network communication control facility (NCCF).

**communication scanner.** See 'scanner'.

**communication scanner processor (CSP).** The processor of a scanner.

**configuration data file (CDF).** A file of the diskette that contains a description of all the hardware features (presence, type, address, and characteristics).

**control panel.** Contains switches and indicators for the use of the customer's operator and service personnel.

**control subsystem (CSS).** The part of the controller that stores and executes the control program, and monitors the data transfers over the channel and transmission interfaces.

**customer engineer (CE).** An individual who provides field services for IBM products.

## D

**data circuit-terminating equipment (DCE).** The equipment installed at the user's premises that provides all the functions required to establish, maintain, and terminate a connection, and the signal conversion and coding between the data terminal equipment (DTE) and the line. For example, a modem is a DCE (see "modem".)

**Note:** The DCE may be separate equipment or an integral part of other equipment.

**data terminal equipment (DTE).** That part of a data station that serves as a data source, data sink, or both, and provides for the data communication control function according to protocols. In the 3720/3721, the DTE function is achieved by the FES with the associated LIC.

**direct attachment.** The attachment of a DTE to the controller without a DCE.

**duplex transmission.** Data transmission in both directions at the same time. Contrast with 'half duplex.'

## E

**emulation program (EP).** The function of a network control program to perform activities equivalent to those of an IBM 2701 Data Adapter Unit, an IBM 2702 Transmission Control, or an IBM 2703 Transmission Control.

**error recovery procedure (ERP).** A procedure designed to help isolate and, where possible, to recover from errors in equipment. The procedures are often used in conjunction with programs that record the statistics of machine malfunctions.

## F

**front-end scanner (FES).** A circuit that scans the transmission lines, serializes and deserializes the transmitted characters, and manages the line services. It is part of the scanner.

## H

**half-duplex.** Data transmission in either direction, one direction at a time. Contrast with 'duplex.'

**Note:** The functional unit using the data circuit determines the choice of direction.

**host processor.** (1) A processor that controls all or part of a user application network. (2) In a network, the processing unit in which the access method for the network resides. (3) In an SNA network, the processing unit that contains a system services control point (SSCP). (4) A processing unit that executes the access method for attached communication controllers. Also called 'host'

## I

**initial microcode load (IML).** The process of loading the microcode into a scanner or into MOSS.

**initial program load (IPL).** The initialization procedure that causes 3720 control program to commence operation.

**input/output control (IOC).** The circuit that controls the input/output from/to the channel adapters and scanners via the IOC bus.

**internal clock circuit (ICC).** An optional circuit that provides, through the LICs, the clock control to the DCEs or DTEs that need it.

**internal function test (IFT).** A set of diagnostic programs designed and organized to detect and isolate a malfunction.

## L

**LID.** Line IDentifier. Value returned to NCP as the result of a Get Line ID command. Identifies the TRM sending a Level 1 interrupt.

**line.** See 'transmission line'.

**line interface coupler (LIC).** A circuit that attaches up to four transmission cables to the controller.

**link protocol.** The set of rules by which a logical data link is established, maintained, and terminated, and by which data is transferred across the link.

**longitudinal redundancy check (LRC).** A system of error checking performed at the receiving station after a block check character has been accumulated.

## M

**maintenance and operator subsystem (MOSS).** The part of the controller that provides operating and servicing facilities to the customer's operator and customer engineer.

**microcode.** A program, that is loaded in a processor (for example, the MOSS processor) to replace a hardware function. The microcode is not accessible to the customer.

**MIT.** MOSS Interface Table. A block of pointer data giving CCU addresses of NCP blocks of a particular TIC. (Also called MPT - Moss Pointer Table.)

**modem (MODulator-DEModulator).** A functional unit that transforms logical signals from a DTE into analog signals suitable for transmission over telephone lines (modulation), and conversely (demodulation). A modem is a DCE. It may be integrated in the DTE.

**MOSS input/output control (MIOC).** The circuit that controls the input/output from/to the MOSS.

**multiplexing.** The division of a transmission facility into two or more channels by allotting the common channel to several different channels, one at a time.

**multipoint connection.** A connection established among more than two data stations for data transmission. The connection may include switching facilities.

## N

**network.** See 'user application network'.

**Network Control Program (NCP).** A program, generated by the user from a library of IBM-supplied modules, that controls the operation of a communication controller.

**nonswitched line.** A permanent dedicated transmission line that connects two or more DTEs. The connection can be point-to-point or multipoint. The line can be leased or private. Contrast with 'switched line.'

## O

**NTRI.** NCP Token-Ring Interconnect.

**online tests.** Testing of a remote data station concurrently with the execution of the user's programs (that is, with only minimal effect on the user's normal operation).

**operator console.** Used to operate and service the 3720 through the MOSS.

## P

**partitioned emulation programming (PEP).** A feature of NCP that permits some lines to operate in network control mode while simultaneously operating others in emulation mode.

**point-to-point connection.** A connection established between two data stations for data transmission. The connection may include switching facilities.

**post telephone and telegraph (PTT).** A generic term for the government-operated common carriers in countries other than the USA and Canada. Examples of the PTT are the Post Office Corporation in the United Kingdom, the Deutsche Bundespost in Germany, and the Nippon Telephone and Telegraph Public Corporation in Japan.

**program-initiated operation (PIO).** A transfer of four bytes between a general register in the CCU and an adapter (channel or scanner). The transfer is initiated by IOH/IOHI instruction and is executed via the IOC bus.

## R

**RBAM.** Register/Block Access Method. A group of subroutines which permit simplified access to and display of TIC or TRM registers and Isthmus Blocks.

**redrive card.** A card that repowers the IOC bus signals at board entry. It also has logical and checking functions.

**reliability.** The ability of a functional unit to perform its intended function under stated conditions, for a stated period of time.

## S

**SCB.** System Control Block. With System Status Block (SSB). Two control blocks located in CCU Storage used for communication between NTRI and a TIC. There is one set for each TIC.

**scanner.** A device that scans and controls the transmission lines. It is composed of one communication scanner processor (CSP) and one front-end scanner (FES).

**SSB.** System Status Block, With System Control Block (SCB). Two control blocks located in CCU Storage used for communication between NTRI and a TIC. There is one set for each TIC.

**start-stop.** A data transmission system in which each character is preceded by a start signal and is followed by a stop signal.

**switched line.** A transmission line with which the connections are established by dialing, only when data transmission is needed. The connection is point-to-point and uses a different transmission line each time it is established. Contrast with 'nonswitched line.'

**synchronous transmission.** Data transmission in which the sending and receiving instruments are

operating continuously at substantially the same frequency and are maintained, by means of correction, in a desired phase relationship. Contrast with 'asynchronous transmission.'

**systems network architecture (SNA).** The description of the logical structure, formats, protocols, and operational sequences for transmitting information through a user application network. The structure of SNA allows the users to be independent of specific telecommunication facilities.

## T

**TIC.** Token-ring Interface Coupler (card). The circuit that attaches a token-ring cable to the controller.

**timeout.** The time interval allotted for certain operations to occur.

**Token-Ring.** IBM Local Area Network.

**Token-Ring.** An information transport system that provides very high speed connection between users within a single building complex through implementation of common:

- Cabling system (called the ring)
- Communication adapter
- Access protocol

**TRA Number (ID).** Number identifying a TRA by its physical position in the ISOLA. The only possible value for ISOLA is 2.

**transmission interface.** The interface between the controller and the user application network.

**transmission line.** The physical means for connecting two or more DTEs (via DCEs). It can be nonswitched or switched. Also called a 'line.'

**transmission subsystem (TSS).** The part of the controller that controls the data transfers over the transmission interface.

**TRI.** Token-Ring Interconnect. A TRSS Function which is available under the Line Function option of the Customer Menu of MOSS.

**TRM.** Token-Ring Multiplexer card. The processor of a token-ring subsystem.

**TRSS.** Token-Ring Subsystem. That part of the controller that controls the data transfer over the token-ring interface. The token-ring adapter of the 3720.

**two-processor switch (TPS).** A feature of the channel adapter that connects a second channel to the same adapter.

## V

**vertical redundancy check (VRC).** An odd parity check performed on each character of a block as the block is received.



# Index

## A

- abbreviations for publications iv
- AC HIT, in MSA 1-21
- accessing CCU functions 1-17
- accessing MOSS functions by service personnel 1-15
- ADDIT INFO, field in diagnostics 3-25
- address compare, in MSA 1-21
- alarms
  - alter external registers 4-14
  - alter LSRs 4-13
  - alter scanner blocks 4-11
  - alter storage 4-9
- applied microcode patches, listing 7-9
- autoBER, (automatic BER analysis) 2-1
- automatic 12-11, 12-12
- automatic BER analysis 2-1
- automatic MOSS dump 12-10
- automatic NCP dump 12-9
- automatic scanner dump 12-11
- automatic TIC dump 12-12

## B

- BER correlation
  - correlation, manual 2-12
  - reference code interpretation into FRUs 2-13
  - reference code interpretation, BER correlation 2-12
- BER correlation, manual 2-12
- BER file, CHGCIL 5-12
- BER ID 2-3
- BER list 2-5
- BER, display request 2-5
- BERs (Box event records)
  - analyzing BERs 2-1
  - common fields in header lines 2-9
  - PF keys 2-10
  - consolidated BER 2-1
  - detail display 2-9
  - display panels 2-7
  - display procedure 2-5
  - display sequence 2-4
  - erasure 2-11
  - generation 2-1
  - ID (identifier) 2-3
  - information, where to find it 2-3
  - list 2-5
  - list display 2-8
  - pf keys 2-9
  - logging procedure 2-1
  - requesting the BER display 2-5
  - storage on disk 2-2
  - summary 2-4
  - summary display 2-7
  - type 2-2
  - updating the service information field in alarm BERs 2-11
- branch trace function, MSA 1-24
- BT function, MSA 1-24

## C

- CA enabling or disabling from console, panel function 9-4
- CCU functions 1-17
- CCU functions, use with diagnostics 3-12
- CCU X'71' output register, in MSA 1-22
- CCU X'72' output register, MSA 1-24
- CCU/scanner IPL information 1-21
- CCU/scanner IPL information, in MSA 1-26
- CDF (configuration data file)
  - creation 8-3
  - display of LSSD 8-14
  - display/update, in service mode 8-7
  - error correction 8-6
  - handling 8-1
  - in service mode 8-2
  - upgrade 8-4
  - verify 8-5
- channel
  - interface
- configuration data file (CDF) 8-1
  - display/update help information 8-15
  - help panel for display/update 8-15
  - in customer mode 8-16
    - display direct-attached line speeds 8-17
    - update direct-attached line speeds 8-17
- console alarms B-4
- console messages. B-1
- consolidated BER 2-1
- consolidated BER example 2-1
- control subsystem, definition of 1-1
- controller, organization 1-1
- correlation of BERs 2-12
- correlation of BERs, manual 2-12
- CSS (control subsystem) 1-1
- customer ID management 12-13
- cycle option C1/Cnnn/C, diagnostics 3-18

## D

- data exchange function, in MSA 1-22
- DCF display on CCU stop address compare 3-13
- DCM (diagnostics control monitor) 3-31
- deleting
  - CHGCIL, the BER file 5-12
  - CHGDMP, the MOSS dump 5-12
  - CHGTRSS the TRSS dump 5-12
  - CHHDMP, the scanner dump 5-12
- deleting a file from MOSS disk 5-12
- deleting files 5-1
- detailed diagnostic information 3-24
- DF function, disk-diskette management 10-1
- diagnostic control monitor (DCM) 3-31
- diagnostic execution modify menu 3-15
- diagnostic options 3-17
- diagnostic request menu 3-9
- diagnostic selection modify menu 3-15
- diagnostic structure 3-2
- diagnostic work area description 3-20
- diagnostics
  - ADDIT INFO 3-25

## diagnostics (*continued*)

- address compare, use with diagnostics 3-12
- commands of the diagnostic execution modify panel 3-16
- cycle option C1/Cnnn/C 3-18
- DCF display on CCU stop address compare 3-13
- duration of 3-3
- entering additional parameters 3-9
- ERC 3-22
- ERR BIT 3-21
- error during diagnostics 3-2
- error reporting display 3-24
- errors, field explanation 3-25
- execution modify menu 3-15
- FRU, with RAC (repair action code) 3-22
- FRU, with RAC and secondary code 3-22
- identification 3-2
- manual intervention 3-11
- manual routines 3-3
- message area 3-22
- offline 3-2
  - monitoring 3-2
- options 3-17
- RAC (repair action code) 3-22
- repeat option R1/Rnnn 3-19
- running offline diagnostics 3-7
- secondary code, with RAC 3-22
- selecting from diagnostic request menu 3-9
- selection modify menu 3-15
- selection procedure 3-7
- stop option S/LS/AL/ALS/B/DM 3-17
- structure 3-2
- unexpected error display 3-26
- use of CCU functions with diagnostics 3-12
- wait option NW/W 3-18
- work area description 3-20
  - ADDR 3-20
  - CE REPLY AREA 3-20
  - COMMAND BARRING 3-20
  - DCF message area 3-20
  - DCF run status 3-21
  - DCF running request 3-21
  - diag run status 3-21
- wrap test 3-5
  - NTT data 3-5
  - NTT modem-in 3-5
- wrap tests during diagnostics, Japan only 3-4
  - NTT on/off driver test 3-4
- wrap tests during diagnostics, testing the cable 3-4
- wrap tests during diagnostics, worldwide. 3-4
- diagnostics, running diagnostics from console 3-1
- disk-diskette management, DF function 10-1
- disk error while a patch is being applied. 7-12
- disk function (DF), disk-diskette management
  - disk-to-diskette procedure 10-4
  - diskette format 10-3
  - diskette formatting 10-13
  - diskette naming 10-7
  - diskette terminology 10-3
  - diskette-to-disk procedure 10-7
  - diskettes to be used 10-3
  - hard disk trouble analysis and replacement 10-17
  - initialize the disk 10-10
  - installing an engineering change (EC), DF function 10-14

## disk function (DF), disk-diskette management (*continued*)

- position disk arm 10-12
- restore disk from diskettes 10-7
- save disk onto diskettes 10-3
- disk initialization, disk function (DF) 10-10
- disk repair, DF function 10-17
- diskette formatting, DF function 10-13
  - diskette initialization procedure 10-13
- diskette initialization procedure, disk function (DF) 10-13
- diskette mode 12-6
- display control storage 4-9
- display external registers 4-14
- display LSRs 4-13
- display of MLT 12-5
- display of module 5-10
- display scanner blocks 4-11
- display TIC Parameter Blocks, in TRSS function 11-14
- display TIC SCB and SSB, in TRSS function 11-13
- display TIC storage, in TRSS function 11-9
- display token-ring status, in TRSS function 11-15
- display/alter scanner control storage, in TSS function 4-9
- display/alter TRM registers, in TRSS function 11-5
- displaying a MOSS Dump 5-3
- displaying dumps
  - CHGDMP, MOSS dump 5-3
  - dump display 5-1
  - dump file summary panel 5-3
  - dump, hexadecimal display of 5-11
  - module 5-10
  - module display 5-1
  - MOSS dump area selection 5-4
  - MOSS dump, display of 5-3
  - MOSS storage 5-9
  - NCP dump 5-2
  - scanner dump 5-5
  - scanner dump area selection 5-6
  - storage display 5-1
  - storage, and modules 5-1
  - TIC dump 5-7
  - TIC dump selection 5-7
  - TRSS dump 5-7
- driver test, NTT 3-4
- dump (MOSS), taking 12-10
- dump (NCP), taking 12-9
- dump (scanner), taking 12-11
- dump (TIC), taking 12-12
- dump scanner 4-4
- dump TIC storage, in TRSS function 11-11
- dump, MOSS, display of 5-3

## E

- EC installation, DF function 10-14
- erasing BER files 2-11
- ERC, diagnostics 3-22
- ERR BIT, in diagnostics 3-21

## F

- file naming, file transfer from PC A-6
- file print at host location 12-14
- file printing with PC
  - procedure A-25
- file transfer at host location 12-14
- file transfer to the host 12-14
- files printing at the host location 12-15
- FRU 1-3
- FRU list, BER correlation 2-12
- FRU, reference code interpretation into FRUs 2-13
- FRU, with RAC 3-23
- FRU, with RAC (repair action code) 3-22
- functions, TRSS 11-1
- functions, TSS 4-1

## H

- hard disk trouble analysis and replacement, DF function 10-17
- how to display alarms B-4

## I

- IBM PC 51xx 1-4
- IBM PC, setting the operating conditions 1-12
- IBM 3101 model 23 1-4
- IBM 3161/3163/3164 1-4
- IML scanner 4-4
- IML, one-scanner from 3720 function menu 12-3
- installation of MCFs 6-12
- intermittent error 1-3
- IPL or MOSS IML with reset from console, panel function 9-5
- IPL the 3720, from 3720 function menu 12-2

## K

- keyboard
  - differences 1-7
  - terminology 1-7

## L

- leaving the MOSS (log off)
  - leaving procedure after local connection 1-19
  - leaving procedure after remote connection 1-19
- line speed updating, CDF 8-17
- line testing possibilities 3-5
- local connection to MOSS by service personnel 1-12
- log off from MOSS console
  - log off procedure, after local connection 1-19
  - log off procedure, after remote connection 1-19
- logon, local 1-12
- logon, MOSS 1-15
- logon, remote 1-10

## M

- machine level table (MLT), display 12-5
- machine status area 1-20
- maintenance and operator subsystem, definition of 1-1
- manual intervention 3-11
- manual routines, in diagnostics 3-3
- MCF (microcode fixes)
  - displaying the MCF history table 6-6
  - error during MCF upgrade 6-9
  - file organization 6-12
  - file, on MOSS disk 6-2
  - handling conditions 6-3
  - history table 6-3
  - installation 6-12
  - listing new MCFs 6-7
  - listing old MCFs 6-7
  - microcode state concept 6-5
  - organization 6-2
  - receiving 6-2
  - restore 6-11
  - upgrade of microcode 6-8
  - what are they 6-1
  - when to use the function 6-2
- MCF history table display 6-6
- MCF transfer
  - from host-VM to 3720 diskette A-4
- MCF, transferring MCFs from VM to PC then to MOSS A-5
- MCF, transferring MCFs from VM to 3720 EC diskette A-4
- MD, MOSS function 5-10
- messages B-1
- messages after a function selection 1-18
- messages at 3720 console B-1
- MLT
  - origin of information 12-5
- MLT, display of 12-5
- mode, diskette 12-6
- MOSS
  - console 1-4, 1-6
    - common commands 1-6
    - common PF keys 1-6
    - hardware prerequisite 1-4
  - operator consoles 1-4
  - panel layout 1-4
  - screen layout 1-4
- MOSS dump
  - automatic 12-10
  - manual 12-10
- MOSS dump, taking 12-10
- MOSS file transfer from and to PC
- MOSS storage, display of 5-9
- MOSS-3720 function
  - start 1-8
- MOSS definition of 1-1
- MSA 1-20
- MSA (machine status area)
  - CCU/scanner IPL 1-20
  - CCU/scanner IPL information 1-21, 1-26
  - field a 1-21
    - CCU MODE 1-21
    - I-STEP 1-21
    - PROCESS 1-21
  - field b 1-21
    - BYP-CCU-CHK 1-21

## MSA (machine status area) (continued)

### field b (continued)

CCU CHECK MODE 1-21  
STOP-CCU-CHK 1-21

### field c 1-21

MOSS-ALONE 1-21  
MOSS-OFFLINE 1-21  
MOSS-ONLINE 1-21  
MOSS STATUS 1-21  
SERVICE-MODE 1-21

### field d 1-21

AC HIT 1-21  
address compare function 1-21

### field e 1-22

CCU X'71' output register 1-22  
control program procedures 1-22  
data exchange function 1-22  
output X'71' instruction 1-22

### field f 1-22

### field g 1-23

HARDCHK 1-23  
HARDSTOP 1-23  
IPL-REQ 1-23  
RESET 1-23  
RUN 1-23  
STOP-AC 1-23  
STOP-BT 1-23  
STOP-PGM 1-23  
STOP-X70 1-23

### field h 1-24

BYP-IOC-CHK 1-24  
IOC check 1-24  
STOP-IOC-CHK 1-24

### field i 1-24

check code, MOSS 1-24  
last MOSS check code 1-24  
MOSS, check code 1-24

### field j 1-24

branch trace (BT) function 1-24

### field k 1-24

CCU X'72' output register 1-24  
control program procedures 1-24  
data exchange function 1-24  
output X'72' instruction, MSA 1-24

### field l 1-24

### field m 1-24

### field mm, TRA no 1-28

### field n 1-25

scanner dump 1-25

### field nn, TRA mode 1-28

CONNECT 1-28  
DISCONNECT 1-28  
UNKNOWN 1-28

### field o 1-25

### field oo, TIC no 1-29

### field pp, TIC mode 1-29

CLOSED 1-29  
DISABLED 1-29  
FROZEN 1-29  
IDLE 1-29  
INITIALIZED 1-29  
OPEN 1-29  
RESET 1-29

### field qq, NTRI status 1-30

### field r, IPL start 1-26

### field s, IPL phase 1 1-26

## MSA (machine status area) (continued)

### field t, IPL phase 2 1-26

### field u, IPL phase 3 1-26

### field v, IPL phase 4 1-26

### field w 1-26

CP LOADED 1-26

IPL CHECK, MSA 1-27

IPL COMPLETE 1-26

### field x, IPL stop 1-28

fields o and p, CS AC parameters 1-25

fields p and q, delayed parameters 1-26

NTRI status (field qq) 1-30

scanner and CCU/scanner IPL information 1-21

scanner IML 1-20

scanner IML, MSA 1-24

CONNECTED 1-24

DISCTD-GO 1-25

DISCTD-STOP 1-25

INITIALIZED 1-24

INOPERATIVE 1-24

RESET 1-25

UNKNOWN-MODE 1-25

scanner information 1-20, 1-24

TIC mode (field pp) 1-29

TIC no (field oo) 1-29

token-ring information 1-28

TRA mode (field nn) 1-28

TRA no (field mm) 1-28

## N

### NCP dump

automatic 12-9

NCP dump, display of 5-2

NCP dump, taking 12-9

non-applied microcode patches, listing 7-9

NTT data wrap test 3-5

## O

OLTs, how to run them 3-32

one-scanner IML from 3720 function menu 12-3

online tests (OLTs), how to run them 3-32

operator console messages B-1

operator consoles, MOSS 1-4

output X'71' instruction, in MSA 1-22

output X'72' instruction 1-24

## P

PAF, panel functions from MOSS console 9-1

CA enabling or disabling from console 9-4

panel functions (PAF) from MOSS console

IPL or MOSS IML with reset from console 9-5

panel layout, MOSS console 1-5

password management 12-13

patches to microcode

applying 7-11

copying from a diskette onto MOSS disk 7-24

copying onto MOSS diskette 7-22

creating 7-6

disk error recovery 7-12

disk error when applying 7-12

erasing 7-14

file organization 7-3

filing 7-8



- patches to microcode (*continued*)
  - installing 7-26
  - listing 7-9
    - applied microcode patches 7-9
    - non-applied microcode patches 7-9
  - modifying 7-18
  - new 7-2
  - patch files 7-2
  - restoring 7-20
  - restoring applied patches 7-20
  - scanning 7-16
  - what they are 7-1
- perform a MOSS-3720 function, how to 1-8
- PF2, in MOSS panels 1-6
- PF3, in MOSS panels 1-6
- position disk arm, disk function (DF) 10-12
- programming support for the 3720 1-1

## R

- RAC (repair action code) 3-22
- RAC and secondary code 3-22
- RAC, unexpected DCF RACs 3-28
- RAC, what to do with 3-23
- RAXFER, in file transfer A-2
  - hardware requirements A-2
- receiving files from support function 12-15
- receiving MCFs 6-2
- reference code interpretation into FRUs 2-13
- reference code interpretation, BER correlation 2-12
- remote application (MOSS-to-PC), starting procedure A-6
- remote connection procedure 1-10
- remote connection to MOSS, using RETAIN 1-10
- remote connection to MOSS, without RETAIN 1-10
- repair action code, unexpected DCF RAC 3-28
- repair action, solid error 1-3
- repeat option R1/Rnnn, diagnostics 3-19
- requesting a CCU function 1-17
- requesting a function from the 3720 function menu 1-16
- restore disk from diskettes, disk function (DF), 10-7
- restore patch function 7-20
- running offline diagnostics 3-7

## S

- SALT
  - INN link testing 12-7
  - link test purpose 12-7
- SALT (stand-alone link tests) 12-7
- save disk onto diskettes, disk function (DF), 10-3
- scanner address compare 4-15
- scanner checkpoint trace, in TSS function 4-17
- scanner dump
  - clearing or keeping 4-6
  - display of 5-5
  - manual 12-11
  - taking 12-11
- screen layout, MOSS console 1-5
- secondary code, with RAC 3-22
- select a MOSS-3720 function, how to 1-8
- select TRA 11-3
- select/release scanner 4-3
- selecting TRSS functions 11-1
- selecting TSS functions 4-1

- serial number, 3720 1-5
- service personnel definitions vii
- setting the operating conditions for an IBM PC 1-12
- SIA, system input area, moving cursor to 1-6
- stand-alone link tests (SALT) 12-7
- start a MOSS-3720 function, how to 1-8
- starting procedure, remote application (MOSS-to-PC), A-6
- stop option S/LS/AL/ALS/B/DM, diagnostics 3-17
- storage
  - alter 4-9
  - display 4-9, 11-9
  - dump 11-11
- system input area (SIA), moving cursor to 1-6

## T

- T, terminate function 1-6
- taking a dump
  - manual scanner dump 12-11
  - manual TIC dump 12-12
  - MOSS dump 12-10
  - NCP dump 12-9
  - scanner dump 12-11
  - TIC dump 12-12
- terminate function (T) 1-6
- TIC
  - mode 11-16
- TIC dump
  - display of 5-7
  - manual 12-12
  - taking 12-12
- TIC mode 1-29
- TIC no in MSA (field oo) 1-29
- token-ring subsystem (TRSS) functions 11-1
- token-ring subsystem (TRSS), definition of 1-1
- Token-ring, Information, in MSA 1-28
- TRA
  - mode 11-16
  - mode in MSA (field nn) 1-28
  - no in MSA (field mm) 1-28
- transfer of MOSS files from and to PC
  - accessing the selection panel A-10
  - application description A-30
  - application environment A-5
  - application messages A-34
  - error recovery A-31
  - file naming A-6
  - from host-VM to PC, then to MOSS A-5
  - MOSS/PC interface A-32
  - PF Keys A-10
  - protocol used A-32
  - RAXFER A-2
  - receiving a MOSS dump A-16
  - receiving a scanner dump A-19
  - receiving a TRSS dump A-21
  - sending an MCF file A-23
  - software requirements A-3
  - starting procedure A-6
  - transfer status A-13
- transfer to the support function 12-14
- transferring MCFs from VM to PC A-5
- transferring MCFs from VM to 3720 EC diskette via PC/AT A-4
- transmission subsystem (TSS) functions 4-1
- transmission subsystem (TSS), definition of 1-1

- TRM registers
  - alter 11-5
  - display 11-5
- TRSS (token-ring subsystem), definition of 1-1
- TRSS dump, display of 5-7
- TRSS functions
  - display 11-9, 11-13, 11-14, 11-15
  - storage 11-9
  - display/alter 11-5
    - alter TRM registers 11-5
    - display TRM registers 11-5
  - dump 11-11
    - storage 11-11
  - messages 11-2
  - modify TRA mode 11-4
  - selecting 11-1
  - TRA 11-3
    - select 11-3
- TSS (transmission subsystem), definition of 1-1
- TSS functions
  - alter external registers 4-14
  - alter LSRs 4-13
  - alter scanner blocks 4-11
  - altering the scanner control storage 4-10
  - checkpoint trace 4-17
  - display external registers 4-14
  - display LSRs 4-13
  - display scanner blocks 4-11
  - display scanner control storage 4-9
  - display/alter 4-9
    - alter control storage 4-9
    - display storage 4-9
  - dump a scanner 4-4
  - IML a scanner 4-4
  - messages 4-2
  - mode control commands 4-7
  - modify scanner mode 4-7
  - release a scanner 4-3
  - scanner 4-3, 4-4, 4-5, 4-6
    - dump 4-4, 4-5
    - IML 4-4, 4-6
    - release 4-3
    - select 4-3
  - scanner address compare 4-15
    - deactivation 4-17
    - selection 4-15
  - scanner mode control 4-7
  - scanner selection 4-2
  - select scanner 4-3
  - selecting 4-1

## U

- unexpected DCF RACs 3-28
- unexpected error display, in diagnostics 3-26

## V

- VM-to-PC transfer procedure A-5

## W

- wait option NW/W, diagnostics 3-18
- what are 3720 diagnostics 3-1
- wrap tests controlled from the MOSS
  - TSS group 12-16
- wrap tests, TSS group 12-16

## Numerics

- 3161/3163, setting the operating conditions 1-14
- 3720 function menu 1-16
- 3720 IPL, from 3720 function menu
  - bypass phase 1 (option 3) 12-3
  - normal IPL (option 1) 12-3
  - phases 12-3
  - step-by-step IPL (option 2) 12-3
- 3720 serial number 1-5

Please write your comments concerning this manual in the space reserved below. We will greatly appreciate them and will consider them for later releases of the present manual.

In advance, thank you.

<b>If you wish a reply, please fill in your:</b>  <b>Name:</b> <b>Address:</b> <b>Job function:</b>

**Note:** Staples can cause problems with automated mail sorting equipment.  
Please use pressure sensitive or other gummed tape to seal this form.

Reader's Comment Form

Fold and tape

Please Do Not Staple

Fold and tape



NO POSTAGE  
NECESSARY  
IF MAILED  
IN THE  
UNITED STATES

**BUSINESS REPLY MAIL**

FIRST CLASS

PERMIT NO. 40

ARMONK, N.Y.

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE:

International Business Machines Corporation  
Department 6R1LG  
180 Kost Road  
Mechanicsburg  
PA 17055



Fold and tape

Please Do Not Staple

Fold and tape

If you would like a reply, please print:

*Your Name* \_\_\_\_\_

*Company Name* \_\_\_\_\_ *Department* \_\_\_\_\_

*Street Address* \_\_\_\_\_

*City* \_\_\_\_\_

*State* \_\_\_\_\_ *Zip Code* \_\_\_\_\_

*IBM Branch Office serving you* \_\_\_\_\_





**SY33-2039-1**

**Printed in USA**

**SY33-2039-01**

